



# Notes on

# Helps's Life of Columbus,

BY

N. K. RAY, B A,

*Professor of English Literature, Maharaja's College, Jeypore,  
Formerly of Berhampore College, (Bengal),*

*Author of "Notes on Church's Trial & Death of Socrates"*

PUBLISHED BY SINGH & BROTHERS,  
JEYPORE, RAJPUTANA

---

AGRA:

PRINTED AT THE MOON PRESS.

1898

*Price One Rupee*

*Postage One Anna*

## Prefatory Notes.

---

With a view to make the body of the Notes less cumbrous, Lives of Persons have been given in the form of Appendix I

Appendix II, contains an exhaustive list of Model Questions, with their answers, some of which have been taken from the F A Examination Papers of the Calcutta University

# SUMMARY OF HELPS' LIFE OF COLUMBUS.

## CHAPTER I.

(PAGES 1—46.)

### INTRODUCTORY REMARKS.

**PARA 1. Difficulties of navigation in the 15th Century.**—(1) In the 15th century, geographical knowledge was only getting a new start, after lying dormant for ages, when fiction was widely mingled with fact (2) Vessels were too imperfectly built to stand the fury of the waves of the Atlantic (3) The Sextant, which is now considered as essentially necessary for navigation, was but clumsily anticipated by the newly invented astrolabe (4) The use of the mariner's compass had scarcely become familiar to navigators (5) People entertained very queer notions of the shape of the earth, and perhaps apprehended danger therefrom in trying to sail too far

**PARAS 2—4 Incitements to discovery.**—(1) Prospect of personal gain by obtaining gold, precious stones, spices and other things from distant lands (2) A genuine longing to promote the spread of Christianity, which was considered to be the only true and saving faith (3) The love of adventure and the natural craving for novelty

**PARA 5 The Mediæval map of the world.**—The known world, in the time of Prince Henry of Portugal was a very small one indeed In the map of the then known world there was neither America nor Australia, but there were some portions of Asia, the greater part of Europe and the northern and north-eastern borders of Africa (The Roman world was indeed very small, and the then history of the world was confined only to a very small space)

### PRINCE HENRY OF PORTUGAL

AND

*Discoveries under him in the 15th century*

**PARA. 6. His birth and parentage**—Prince



Henry was born in 1394. He was the third son of John I of Portugal and Philippa, the daughter of John of Gaunt, Duke of Lancaster. **Prince Henry at Ceuta.**—In 1415, Prince Henry was with his father at the memorable capture of Ceuta, then an important commercial town, lying opposite to Gibraltar. While here, the idea of making further discoveries struck the Prince. **His motives of discovery.**—The special reasons which impelled the Prince to undertake the task of discovery was that it was not likely to be taken up by any private individual on account of its being unproductive of any profit. The clever guesses of learned men, the confused statements of Arabic geographers, and the fables of romantic adventures had also their influence upon the ardent mind of the Prince.

**PARA 7 The Prince at Sagres, 1418.**—Prince Henry settled at Sagres, a promontory in the south of Portugal, for his study and watchful observation of the incidents at sea.

**PARAS 8—11 First expedition under Zarco and Vaz (1418).**—In the year 1418, the Prince ordered two vessels to be placed under Zarco and Vaz, two gentlemen of his household, whom he directed to sail down the Barbary Coast on a voyage of discovery. **Porto Santo discovered (1418).**—The two captains discovered by chance a little island, where they took refuge, and which, from that event, they called Porto Santo. This island the Prince gave to Perestrelo, Columbus's father-in-law, for colonization. **Madeira discovered (1419).**—Zarco and Vaz, in the following year, discovered a beautiful island abounding in trees, which they named *Madeira* (wood), and was given by the Prince to the discoverers as a reward. Zarco and Vaz began to cultivate the island, but kindled a fire in it, which lasted seven years.

**PARAS 12—14 The coast of Africa explored.**—Henceforth Prince Henry prosecuted his discoveries with a degree of steadiness. For a long time Cape Bojador was the extreme limit of discovery and was therefore as a bar to further prosecution of maritime discovery.

**PARAS 15—16. Popular clamour against Henry's proceedings**—Henry's laudable undertaking was little appreciated by the people. For 12 years he had been sending forth ships and men, but the people looked upon, and criticised, his doings as altogether unwise, unnecessary and even impious.

**PARAS 17—19 The Prince continues steady.** Prince Henry was not a man to be diverted from his purpose by such adverse criticism of the people, although he himself felt grave doubts at times as to the propriety of his undertakings. Sometimes he was chagrined at the fruitlessness of his attempts, but he was never disheartened.

**Expedition under Gil Eannes**—The Prince for the second time, resolved to send out Gil Eannes, one of his household, who being entrusted with the command, determined to meet all dangers rather than to disappoint his master. **Cape Bojador passed by Gil Eannes.**—Gil

Eannes was successful in his voyage, for he passed Cape Bojador,—a noticeable event in the history of African discovery. He had brought some of the foreign plants home with him in a barrel of the new-found earth.

**A lull in Portuguese discovery (1434—1441)**

Now came stormy times for the Portuguese kingdom. The mind of the Prince was now too engrossed in his duties of regency to be devoted to maritime discovery.

**PARA 20 Expedition under Antonio Goncalvez (1441)**—In course of a voyage, in 1441, under Antonio Goncalvez, a number of Moors was captured and taken home. Tristam, another captain under Henry, made a further capture of Moors, and returned to Portugal with the spoil. **Grant from Pope**—Pope Martin V., on application, granted to the Portuguese crown all that should be conquered, from Cape Bojador to the Indies.

**PARAS 21—25 Slave-trade initiated, (1444)**—A company was formed, in 1444, at Lagos, to undertake discovery along the African coast, on condition of paying a certain portion of the profit-made. Slave-trade, now found to be the most lucrative, was fairly commenced in Europe. **First Portuguese settlement on the African**

**coast (1454)** — A Portuguese factory was established in one of the Argum islands, in 1454, in order to systematise the slave-trade. **Nature of the Portuguese voyages** — The account of the Portuguese voyages along the African coast is rather an uninteresting reading. The lives of the adventurers themselves were marked by strange vicissitudes, sometimes hopeful, sometimes discouraging.

**PARAS 26—33 Ca da Mosto's first voyage (1454)** — Ca da Mosto, a young Venetian, was detained on board a Venetian galley at Cape St Vincent, in 1454. Prince Henry, who was living close to the Cape, offered Ca da Mosto employment under him, which he gladly accepted. Accordingly Ca da Mosto set off on a voyage of discovery. He was an intelligent man, giving his own account of his voyage. **Management of slave-trade, (1454)** — The Portuguese factory at Argum was the head quarters of the trade. The Arabs (Moors) of that district acted as middle men in the transaction of business. They got slaves and gold in exchange for their Barbary horses, silver, and silks of Granada and Tunis. Before this trade, the Portuguese used to capture the Moors and Azenegues themselves. **Authenticity of Ca da Mosto's account** — Ca da Mosto's account is reliable, as he had in him a rare combination of honesty, intelligence, keen observation and a clear narrative power. **The Senegal, a marked boundary** — Ca da Mosto noticed a marked difference between the people and country on the opposite sides of the river Senegal, the men on the northern side, being small, spare and tawny, while those on the south, — the Jalofs, — a cleanly, talkative, hospitable, tall, black, and corpulent people. **Budomel, a Negro king** — From the country of the Jalofs, Ca da Mosto proceeded 800 miles further to the country of a negro chief, called king Budomel. Here the religion, (at least of the court), was Mohammedanism. **The natives near the Gambia** — The voyagers came to the river Gambia, (now called Gambia) which they entered; but the natives attacked them with signal bravery. **The voyagers bound homewards.** — During

their stay in the river Gambia, the voyagers saw the constellation of the southern cross Without proceeding any further, they forthwith returned to Portugal

**PARA 34. Ca da Mosto's second voyage (1456)**—Two years later, in 1456, Ca da Mosto made another voyage in course of which he *discovered the Cape de Verde Islands*, proceeded up the river Gambia again, passed Cape Roxo, and sailed up the Rio Grande

**PARA 35 Pedro de Cintra**—Sometime between 1460 and 1464, an expedition went out under Pedro de Cintra to prosecute discoveries along the African coast These voyagers *discovered Sierra Leone*, and went a little beyond Cape Mesurado **Prince Henry's death**—Prince Henry died in 1463

**PARAS 36—39 His character**—(*Faria ye Sousa's estimate*)—Prince Henry was bold in war, versed in arts and letters, an eminent mathematician, extremely generous, and most zealous for the increase of Christianity. No bad habit was known in him (*Azurara's estimate*) He was a man "of great counsel and authority, wise and of good memory, but in some things slow" His extreme good-nature and placidity of disposition seemed an actual fault in him He was accordingly thought "deficient in distributive justice" His house was the resort of all good men of the time, and he was a man of intense labour and study In short, he must be acknowledged as one of the most notable men, not only of his own country and period, but also of all times and all nations

**PARAS 40—49. Other discoveries after Henry's death:**—(1) **Portuguese Gold Coast**—About six years after Prince Henry's death, the Gold Coast was discovered by Fernando Gomez and a Portuguese fort was built there. (2) **Fernando Po**.—Fernando Po discovered an island which was then called Formosa, but which is now named after its discoverer (3) **Congo**.—Diego Cam, accompanied by Martin Behaim, discovered the kingdom of Congo (4) **The Stormy Cape, afterwards the Cape of Good Hope**—The king of Portugal sent out Bartholomew Diaz and two other captains on further dis-

covery, with the special object of tracing the whereabouts of Piester John, of whom tradition spoke as a Christian king ruling over a Christian nation somewhere in the Indies. They did not find Piester John, but proceeded 1050 miles southwards as far as a Cape, which they called Stormy Cape, but was afterwards known as Cape of Good Hope. Bartholomew Columbus, brother of Christopher, was engaged in this voyage. **The discovery of the Cape of Good Hope,—a theme in fiction**—Camoens in his *Lusiad*, has very beautifully introduced the incident of the discovery of the Cape of Good Hope. The passage in question is one of the most celebrated in modern poetry. **The story of the Genius of the Cape of Good Hope**—Just on the arrival of the voyagers at the Cape, a cloud rose and then a monstrous giant appeared who poured forth bitterest maledictions on the discoverers. On being asked who he was, he replied that he was the great Stormy Cape, so long hidden from mankind, and showed that he was highly offended at his being thus discovered. He then related the story of his love. He was Adamastor, one of the Titans, and fell in love with Thetis, the sea-goddess, by whose magical arts he was deceived, and found himself caressing a rough crag instead of her countenance. Maddened with grief and disappointment, he wandered forth to seek some sequestered spot where to keep himself and his misery concealed, but the vengeance of the gods pursued him even there, and he felt his flesh being gradually transformed into rock, and his members extending themselves among the waves, and to crown his misery, his beautiful Thetis always encircled him. So saying, the giant transformed himself into a dark cloud and the sea roared with a deep sound. (5) **Expedition of discovery under Covilham and Paiva, mainly by land**—In the reign of John II of Portugal, Pedro de Covilham and Alfonso de Paiva went on an enterprise of discovery, mainly by land. Paiva died at Carro, and Covilham travelled as far as India and came back to Cairo. He again set out and at last came into the kingdom of Shoa to the court of "the King of Habbesh."

**PARAS 50—55 Bemoin, Prince of Jalof.**—Bemoin, Prince of Jalof, came to Lisbon in order to seek the protection of the king of Portugal. Brian, king of Jalof, his brother, was vicious and inert and threw upon Bemoin the cares of government, by appointing him prime minister. Bemoin diligently made friends with the Portuguese. A brother of Brian, by his father's side, Cibitab by name, grew jealous of Bemoin, revolted, killed Brian, and defeated Bemoin, who came to Lisbon in order to seek the protection of the Portuguese. Bemoin was magnificently received by king John of Portugal. The negro prince became a convert, and 24 of his gentlemen followed his example. He made a public speech in his native tongue. He gave information respecting various African nations, and of a Jewish people in particular. He obtained from the Portuguese, their military assistance. He was sent back to his native country with a Portuguese squadron which was instructed to reinstate him in his power, and to build a fort on the Senegal. In course of the building of the fort, the Portuguese commander, suspecting the good faith of Bemoin, killed him with a dagger. The king was displeased at this sad fate of Bemoin.

**PARAS 56—57 Prince Henry and Columbus compared.**—(1) Prince Henry's Portuguese discoveries along the African coast extending over a distance of 6000 miles and pursued during a period of 70 years, were, no doubt, very arduous, but the American discovery of Columbus was more daring and brilliant. (2) The proceeding of both Prince Henry and Columbus were characterised by an equal degree of energy, perseverance and courage. (3) Prince Henry, who withstood the temptation of wealth, rank, and court-intrigues, and pursued the main object of his life, in spite of popular clamour, was a man hardly inferior to Columbus, in point of high intrinsic worth, unity of purpose and steadiness of enthusiasm. (4) Prince Henry, in one respect, was superior to Columbus, he being the father of modern geographical discovery, which lent a great impulse, if not the idea itself, to Columbus's fertile mind. The African expeditions gave a keen stimulus to the researches of geographers, and set the fashion of the day.

## CHAPTER II.

(PAGES 47—62)

## COLUMBUS,

THE DISCOVERER AND FIRST GOVERNOR OF AMERICA.

## HIS EARLY LIFE

**PARA 1** **Dispute as to the birth-place of Columbus.**—There is some degree of uncertainty and consequent dispute as to the birth-place of Columbus. More than half a dozen different Italian villages claim the honour of being the birth-place of the great navigator **Genoa, obtains the palm.**—The discovery of the will in which Columbus bequeathed part of his property to the Bank of Genoa conclusively settles the point in favour of that city (Genoa) **Date of Columbus's birth.**—Authorities vary as to the date of Columbus's birth, of which there is no direct evidence for any satisfactory conclusion. Conjectures range over a period of 20 years from 1436 to 1456. Irving adopts 1436, but according to Helps, the date may be fixed either at 1447 or 1448.

**PARA 2**—**His father's profession.**—His father was a wool-carder, but this does not imply that his family was particularly of humble origin. Christopher was not the first *admiral* of his family. There were two other naval commanders bearing his name in the maritime service of Genoa and France.

**PARA 3**—**His education.**—He laid the foundation of his knowledge of mathematics and nautical science at the University of Pavia. **Influences upon his mind preparing him for discovery.**—(1) Living at Genoa, he would always regard the sea as the great field of enterprise. (2) News of the latest conclusions of the Arabic geographers and rumours of the African explorations would often excite his interest. **The beginning of his nautical profession.**—Columbus spent only a few months as a wool-carder, but actually took to his nautical profession before he was 15 years old.

**PARA 4.** **His early voyages.** He travelled over a large part of the then known world and visited

England, Iceland, Friesland, El Mina on the coast of Guinea, and had seen the Islands of the Grecian Archipelago. He mentions his having been employed by king Rene of Provence to intercept a Venetian galley.

**PARAS 5—7 His bodily features**—Columbus had a commanding presence, and had a middle stature, a long countenance, a light hair, an aquiline nose, and light grey eyes full of expression. **His mental and moral characteristics**—His mental characteristics were such as might be expected in the originator of a grand work. There was great simplicity about him, and much loyalty and veneration. He was magnanimous, sensitive and impassioned, humane, self-denying, and courteous. He was resolute and enduring, and like Lord Bacon, he possessed an intellect of a largely inquiring kind. His constancy of mind never failed him, nay, not even in adversity. An excess of enthusiasm for his designs sometimes made him imprudent and forgetful of his own interest.

**PARA 8 His great resolve for discovery**—The almost interminable series of Portuguese discoveries must have greatly influenced Columbus's mind. From the very beginning he had a desire for knowing the secrets of the world. At last he arrived at a conclusion that there was a way by the west to the Indies, that he could discover this way and so come to Cipango, Cathay and the Grand Khan, as described by Marco Polo, and other ancient authorities.

**PARAS 9—11 Authorities he relied on**—The grounds on which Columbus's theory was based may be divided into three classes—(1) *Reasons from nature* (2) *The authority of learned writers*. He accepted the opinion of ancient geographers regarding the shape and size of the earth. He believed the world to be a sphere, he under-estimated its size, but over-estimated the size of the Asiatic continent. The farther that continent extended eastwards, the nearer it came round towards Spain. This had been, more or less, the opinion of Aristotle, Seneca, Strabo, Marco Polo and Sir John Maundeville. But the work which had most weight with



Columbus, was the "*Cosmographia*" of Cardinal Aliaco. The authority of Paulo Toscanelli, the learned philosopher of Florence, confirmed him in his views of the existence of a western passage to the Indies (3) *The testimony of sailors.* A fragment of drift-wood, apparently carved with some savage implements, of mammoth reeds, corresponding with Ptolemy's account of Indian bamboo, two dead human bodies unlike those of any race of Europe or Africa. These seem to have been regarded by Columbus as strong proofs of the existence of land across the Atlantic.

**PARA 12 His arrival at Lisbon**—About the year 1470, Columbus arrived at Lisbon. He narrowly escaped being drowned at sea, when engaged in a naval battle off St Vincent, and trying to seek safety by swimming from his burning ship.

**PARA 13 His marriage.**—Columbus married Donna Felipa Munnis Perestrelo, an inmate of a convent in Lisbon, which Columbus regularly attended. She was the daughter of Perestrelo, one of Henry's captains, who became the first governor of Porto Santo. **His stay at Porto Santo**—Columbus took up his abode on the island of Porto Santo, and busily engaged himself in studying the subject of navigation, earning his livelihood by making maps and charts for sale.

**PARA 14 Columbus's application**—(1) **To the Senate of Genoa**—There are vague traditions that Columbus made an effort to induce the Senate of Genoa to patronize him in his proposed undertaking, but it was not attended with success. (2) **To the court of Portugal**—Columbus applied to king John II of Portugal, who seems to have given him a sort of qualified promise of his support, but to have disagreed with Columbus as to terms. The king referred the matter to a Committee of Council for Geographical Affairs headed by the Bishop of Ceuta who made the shameful proposal that a ship should be secretly sent out with instructions laid on the plan submitted by Columbus before the Committee. This dishonest effort however, turned out a failure.

---

## CHAPTER III.

(PAGES 63—82)

## HIS CAREER IN SPAIN.

**PARA 1 Columbus's arrival in Spain** — In 1485, Columbus, out of sheer disgust, left Lisbon for Spain, with Diego, his son by Donna Felipa, now no longer living **Seeks patronage of some Spanish Grandees.**—

Columbus applied for support to the Duke of Medina Sidonia and the Duke of Medina Celi. The Duke of Medina Celi is said to have maintained Columbus two years in his house, and gave him a letter of introduction to the Queen, to whom he strongly recommended the plan of

**Columbus at Court** — The time was inopportune for Columbus's suit, as the Court, which was then at Cordova, was actively preparing for the conquest of Granada.

However Columbus was fortunate enough to find at once a friend in Alonzo de Quintanilla, the Treasurer of the House-

**His interview with Ferdinand and Isabella**

—Ferdinand and Isabella listened kindly to what he had to say, and the conference ended by then referring the business to the Queen's Confessor Fra Harnando de Talavera, afterwards Bishop of Granada, who convened a meeting of geographers at Salamanca in 1487.

**The Council of Geographers** — It was impossible for the members of this Council to be unprejudiced, as most of them were clergymen who combined to crush Columbus with theological objections. The council decided that the project was vain and impossible, and that it would not be worthy of their Majesties to decide any thing upon such trivial grounds of information.

**PARA. 2 The reply of the sovereigns** — Ferdinand and Isabella said that as there were pecuniary difficulties on account of the wars, especially the war against Granada, they could not undertake at present any new expenses.

**PARA 3 His five years' life at court as suitor** — His suitor's life at the Spanish court lasted five years. During this period Columbus followed the moving court as the exigencies of the war required. This

was a most disgusting affair. During this dreary period of a suitor's life he enjoyed one delight, *viz*, that of love for his lady-love Beatrice.

**PARA 4 Encouragement of friends**—*Juan Perez de la Marchena*, guardian of the monastery of *La Rabida* in Andalusia, had been the Queen's Confessor. The little town of *Palos*, with its maritime population, was near the monastery. Among the frequent visitors were *Martin Alonzo Pinzon*, the chief ship-owner of *Palos* and *Garcia Hernandez*, the village doctor, who being well-versed in physical science, was competent to appreciate the arguments of Columbus, and so became an upholder of his project. **Columbus bent upon leaving Spain**—Abandoning his suit at court in disgust, Columbus came to the monastery, before quitting Spain, in order to fetch his son *Diego*, whom he had left with *Juan Perez* to be educated. *Perez* could not bear Columbus's leaving Spain for some foreign country. **Conference at La Rabida**—The three friends discussed together and they became convinced of the practicability of the undertaking. Their discussions ended in the conclusion that *Juan Perez* should write to the Queen on the subject. He did so, and the result was favourable. **Columbus at Court again**—The Queen sent for *Juan Perez*, heard what he had to say, and remitted money to Columbus to enable him to come to court to renew his suit. Accordingly Columbus attended the court again, and his negotiations were resumed. **His conditions**—His conditions were that he was to be made an admiral at once, to be appointed viceroy of the countries he should discover, and to have one-eighth of the profits of the expedition. His conditions were so large because he intended to go to Jerusalem and to undertake another crusade out of the proceeds of the enterprise. **His second failure at Court**—His negotiations were again broken off on the ground of the largeness of his conditions. Columbus therefore resolved again to go to France when at the intercession of *Alonzo de Quintanilla* and *Juan Perez*, *Cardinal Mendoza* granted him an interview, who was pleased with him. **His**

**success at Court.**—Columbus then offered to pay an eighth of the expense of the expedition. Still nothing was done. At last *Luis de Santangel*, receiver of the ecclesiastical revenues of the crown of Aragon made a touching appeal to the Queen, and concluded by saying that all that Columbus wanted was only a million of maravedis. His well-addressed arguments prevailed. The Queen said she would undertake the enterprise, as soon as the public treasury was a little replenished. At this Santangel offered to advance the money required. The Queen therefore sent for Columbus who returned to the court at Santa Fe, and was well received by Isabella. Finally the agreement was settled with the Secretary Coloma.

**PARA. 5. King Ferdinand's character.**—Ferdinand was not a warm supporter of Columbus like Isabella. He looked rather indifferently upon his proposal. It is probable that Ferdinand felt something like contempt for the enthusiasm of Columbus. He was suspicious, cold and selfish, and presented a strong contrast to Isabella, who was good-natured, noble-minded and sympathetic.

**PARA. 7. The agreement.**—The conditions of Columbus which were granted by the king and queen run as follows.—(1) That Columbus should be made admiral of the seas and countries to be discovered, and that it should be a life-long and hereditary dignity. (2) That he was to have one-tenth of the profits of all merchandise. (3) That he was to be made sole judge of all mercantile cases in the countries to be discovered. (4) In modification of the second condition, Columbus offered to pay one-eighth of the expenses, and in return to earn the eighth part of the profits. The agreement was signed at Santa Fe, on the 17th April, 1492. The sovereigns gave him a letter of recommendation to any supposed oriental chief at whose territories Columbus might arrive. **Columbus at Palos again.**—Columbus came to Palos, and here all preliminary arrangements for fitting out the vessels were made. 1140,000 maravedis were advanced by Santangel in May, 1492. The town of

Palos was ordered to provide two vessels. The sovereigns issued an order authorizing Columbus to press men into the service. The Pinzons, rich men and skilful mariners of Palos joined in the undertaking and aided it with money. So three vessels were manned with ninety mariners and provisioned for a year. The vessels were small in size, but Columbus considered them suitable for the undertaking. Of them, the *Santa Maria* was commanded by Columbus himself, the *Pinta*, by Martin Alonzo Pinzon, and the *Nina*, by Vincent Yanez Pinzon.

## CHAPTER IV.

(PAGES 83—110)

### COLUMBUS'S FIRST VOYAGE.

**PARAS 1—3 Columbus sets sail, August 3rd, 1492.**—On a Friday, the 3rd of August, 1492, the voyagers set sail from the Bar of Saltes, advancing towards the Canary Islands. The account of the voyage is mainly gathered from Columbus's own diary.

**PARA. 4. To and from the Canary Islands.**—The little squadron reached the Canary Islands in a few days. The admiral was obliged to stay here some time to refit the *Pinta* which had lost her rudder, and on the 6th September, set sail from Gomera, one of the Canary Islands.

**PARA 5 Rumours of land seen.**—(1) Many respectable Spaniards of these Islands asserted on oath that they saw land each year. (2) In 1484, some one came from Madeira to the king of Portugal to beg a ship to discover that land which he could see each year. **Columbus recorded two rates of sailing.**—Columbus entered in his diary two rates of sailing, one for his own use, and the other for the crew. **Line of no variation indicated by the needle.**—In the evening of the 13th September, the needle of the compass was seen to decline to the north-west, and on the following morning, to the north-east. **Tropical birds**—On the 14th, two tropical land birds were seen by the sailors of the *Nina*. **Plains of sea-weed.**—On the 16th, they first came upon those immense plains of sea-weed which constitute the *Mar de*

*Sargossa* and which occupy a very extensive space in the Atlantic On the 17th, they saw more plains of sea-weed. **The needle at fault again.**—On the 17th, the needle again declined to the west a whole point of the compass and more At day-break, the needle pointed to the north again **Columbus's explanation.**—Columbus explained that the phenomenon of variation was caused by the north star moving round the pole **Signs of land.**—(1) They caught a crab which does not live far away from the land (2) On the 18th they saw many birds and a cloud in the distance (3) On the 19th, they twice saw a pelican, 'in the morning as well as in the evening (4) They saw drizzling rain without wind.

**PARA 6 Firmness of his resolve.**—He concluded that the land indicated by these phenomena could only be islands which he would see on his return, but now he was determined to press steadily on to the Indies

**PARA. 7. Conspiracy among his men.**—Some of his men concluded to throw him overboard and give out at home that he fell in by chance The people were very much tormented with fears of all sorts.

**PARA. 8 A false appearance of land.**—On they went, seeing occasional signs of land, but land did not appear At one time they were all convinced that they had seen land, but it turned out to be no land

**PARA 9 The mariners and Columbus contrasted.**—Though stout-hearted, these mariners had no noble purpose like that of Columbus, to keep up their spirits Columbus firmly determined to proceed in the direction of the Indies

**PARA 10 The mutiny of the sailors.**—Meantime it became very difficult for him to maintain discipline among his men They became extremely unruly and excited **Columbus's attitude towards them**—Columbus dealt with the refractory sailors with great tact, sometimes soothing their feelings with kind words, sometimes holding out high hopes before them, sometimes by appealing to their good sense, and sometimes again by threatening them with punishment **Signs of land again, October 11th, 1492.**—On the 11th October, they saw

surer signs of the proximity of land. They now saw (1) a table-board, (2) a carved stick, (3) and a branch of a haw tree with fruits on it (4) Columbus saw a light, Pedro Gutierrez also saw it. Rodrigo Sanchez, who had been sent by their Highnesses as over-looker, saw the light which appeared like a candle going up and down.

**PARA. 11. Land first seen.**—It was from the deck of the *Pinta* that land was at last seen by one Rodrigo de Triana, at 2 A. M. This poor common sailor had afterwards become a Mahomedan for not getting the promised pension which was adjudged to the admiral.

**PARAS. 12—13 Religious motives of the sovereigns.**—In the preface to his diary, Columbus speaks of the motives of the Spanish monarchs. He begins by saying how, in 1492, they finished their war with the Moors; and how they thought fit to send him to the Indies to see the Grand Khan and try to baptise him; and how at last they expelled the Jews from Spain.

**PARA. 14 Good faith of Columbus, unimpeachable.**—In making the aforesaid remarks, Columbus was not insincere, as they were made in the diary, which was not meant for the public.

**PARA. 15 The motives of Isabella.**—The expulsion of the Jews, the harsh treatment of the Moorish converts and the establishment of the Inquisition were assented to by Isabella from the highest and purest motives. She obeyed the voice of heaven, taking the wise and good men of her day as its interpreters.

**PARAS 16—18 First landing in the New World.**—On the 12th of October, 1492, Columbus landed in the New World. It was a fresh and verdant, small island. Upon the banner a green cross was depicted with the initials of Ferdinand and Isabella surmounted by their respective crowns. The islanders stood along the shore, gazing with dumb surprise. On touching land Columbus and his followers fell upon their knees and offered up their heart-felt thanks to God. Columbus was the least surprised by all he saw, but was, at the same time, the most affected.

**PARA 19. A general reconciliation**—The followers of Columbus now sought his pardon with tears, and expressed their admiration, gratitude and assurances of fidelity. Columbus in his turn most graciously pardoned his followers who had proved the most refractory only recently

**PARA 20 Columbus took legal possessions of San Salvador**—Columbus, with the due legal formalities, took possession, on behalf of the Spanish monarchs, of the island of Guanahani, which he at once named San Salvador

**PARAS 21—25 Characteristics and habits of the Indians**—(1) **Of those of San Salvador**—The Indians of San Salvador were innocent and simple and capable of being converted to Christianity more through love than by force. They were very poor in every thing and went totally naked. They were well made with good countenances and their colour yellow. They painted themselves and neither carried arms, nor understood such things and their darts were without iron. (2) **Of those of a neighbouring island**—The people of a neighbouring island were more domestic and tractable than those of San Salvador, and more intelligent too. (3) **Of those by the Rio de Mares**—The houses of the natives at the mouth of the Rio de Mares were the best they had seen. They were made very large, appeared as royal tents, and were very clean and their furniture very well arranged. They were made of palm branches and were very beautiful. The natives had excellent nets, fish-hooks, and fishing-tackle, and there were tame birds and dogs that did not bark. (4) **Of those near the Rio del Sol**—The Indians of the coast near the Rio del Sol were very gentle, without knowing what evil was, neither killing, nor stealing.

**PARAS 26—27. The practice of smoking discovered**—Two discoverers found that the people of the country indulged in a fumigation of a peculiar kind. The smoke was absorbed into the mouth through a charred stick, and was caused by burning certain herbs wrapped in a dry leaf, which was called "*tabaco*". The Indians said that it took away fatigue. The two discoverers



were well received everywhere This shows that there existed friendliness between the natives and the Europeans

**PARAS 28—29 Gold ornaments observed—**The first Indians Columbus met with had some gold ornaments about them Being asked whence this gold came from, they pointed to the south where there was a great king who had much gold **Learned delusions of Columbus—**Columbus interpreted that the natives meant the Grand Khan of Cathay (Tartary) He was possessed with the notions borrowed from Marco Polo and other travellers **Further explorations.—**(1) Columbus discovered a group of islands, to the south of San Salvador, which he named *Santa Maria de la Concepcion* (2) He then discovered Cuba (3) Then he came to Hispaniola (Hayti), the territory of Guacanagari, where he landed and was well received Hispaniola, being a central point of the New World, was conveniently situated for the spread of future discovery and conquest

**PARA. 30 Insubordination of mariners.—**Martin Alonzo Pinzon, being actuated by covetousness, wilfully deserted Columbus while on the coast of Cuba. One night while Columbus was enjoying a deep slumber, his vessel was entrusted by the steersman to the care of a raw young sailor, through whose negligence it was wrecked The good Guacanagari gave them not only sympathy but assistance **Character of the Indians.—**Columbus wrote that the Indians were a loving, uncovetous, and docile people, they loved their neighbours as themselves and they talked most gently and sweetly, always with a smile

**PARAS 31—32 A colony founded and a fort built.—**The admiral founded a colony in Guacanagari's land and built a fort which he called *La Navidad*. He remained on excellent terms with the good chief Guacanagari **Columbus sets sail for Spain, (Jany. 4th, 1493.)** He left the fort under the care of a small body of his followers, and now made preparations to return homewards. Columbus set sail for Spain on the 4th of January, 1493.

## CHAPTER V.

(PAGES 111—123)

## COLUMBUS'S HOMEWARD VOYAGE

**PARA 1. Pinzon's explanation**—On doubling the promontory of Monte Christo, Columbus saw the *Pinta*. The two vessels entered together into the harbour. Pinzon went on board the admiral's vessel to give an explanation of his desertion. He said it was due to the accidental result of a storm. The admiral seemed to be satisfied with this explanation, but recorded a remark in his diary on Pinzon's bad faith. **The real cause of Pinzon's desertion**—On receiving a report from the natives of a gold-producing island, Pinzon wished to forestall Columbus in its discovery, and to secure the profits for himself. He had not discovered it, but obtained, by barter, a large quantity of gold, with half of which he bribed the crew into silence.

**PARA 2 Affray with the aborigines**—In the neighbourhood of the Gulf of Samana in St Domingo, an affray took place with the aborigines, for the first time, in consequence of an attack made by them on an exploring expedition sent by Columbus. He had at last come to an amicable settlement with them.

**PARA. 3 Search for the Amazonians**—On the 16th of January, Columbus left the Gulf of Samana on his homeward course, from which however he deviated to sail in quest of the island, peopled with Amazons, as described by Marco Polo. Home-sickness having prevailed amongst the crew, Columbus soon abandoned the idea, and resumed his homeward course.

**PARAS 4—6 A terrible storm encountered.**—On the 12th February, a storm overtook them, which became more and more furious, until, on the 14th, it rose to a hurricane. The crew gave themselves up for lost, but Columbus's brave heart bore him up. The *Nina* felt the want of the ballast, of which the purpose was now served by filling the empty casks with water. Columbus did not neglect to invoke divine aid. He drew lots to choose one of the crew to perform a pilgrimage to the holy

shrine at Guadaloupe The admiral was chosen, afterwards they made a vow to go in procession, clothed in penitential robes, to the first church, dedicated to the Virgin, which they should meet with on their first landing When there remained very little chance of safety, Columbus wrote a short account of his voyage on parchment, which he enclosed in a cask and committed to the waves

**PARA. 7 The pilgrims captured in the island of St. Mary**—On the 15th February the storm abated to a certain extent They saw, but soon lost sight of, some land on the E. N. E., but saw another, afterwards known to be the island of St. Mary, lying more to the south, which they reached on the 17th It belonged to the Portuguese, and the governor sent friendly messages to Columbus When half the crew were going on a pilgrimage to the chapel of St. Mary, in fulfilment of their vow, the men of the governor captured all of them With only three able sea-men, Columbus was bound to sail off nearly to St. Michael's On the 21st, he returned to St. Mary's, and the governor decided on restoring the crew. On the 24th, the *Nina* again sailed for Spain, another tempest overtaking them and continuing for more than a week with more or less fury

**PARAS 8—9. Arrival in the Tagus**—In the last storm, the dangers of the voyage reached their climax Fortunately, however he was able to anchor in the Tagus on the 4th March. **His visit to the king of Portugal**—Columbus sent a message of his arrival to the king of Portugal, who happened to be living hard by. In reply, he received an invitation to the court, with which he thought proper to comply **Arrival at Palos**.—On the 13th March Columbus left the Tagus for the bar of Saltes at Palos and reached it safe on the 15th, a Friday The enthusiasm and excitement caused by the success of the expedition were unbounded **Pinzon's bad faith**.—The court was at Barcelona, and Columbus despatched a letter to the sovereigns informing them of the success of his project, and then appeared before them in person. The *Pinta* reached the port of Bayonne, whence Pinzon

had sent a letter to the monarchs, announcing "his" discoveries and proposing to come to court. He seems to have utterly ignored Columbus. He was, in reply, informed by the sovereigns not to go to court without the admiral. At this he was overwhelmed with grief and died from a mental distress and a broken heart.

**PARA. 10. Solemn reception at court.**—At Barcelona a magnificent reception was accorded to Columbus by the court. So great was the zeal of the people, that the streets of the city could not contain the concourse of eager and curious spectators. **A Roman triumph and Columbus's procession compared**—A triumphal procession like his the world had not yet seen. (1) The captives accompanying a Roman general's car were, no doubt, strange barbarians. But they were not unknown creatures, while those with Columbus were beings of another world. (2) The Roman general was a conqueror of men, whereas Columbus was the conqueror, not of men, but of nature and deep-seated and century-old prejudices of men. **Columbus tells the story of his voyage**—In the presence of the assembled court at Barcelona, Columbus approached the monarchs, knelt down before them and paid them his deep homage. He then recounted briefly the events of the voyage and concluded by showing new things and creatures brought with him.

**PARAS 11—12 Honours bestowed upon Columbus**—Ferdinand and Isabella offered up prayers and thanks to God, and the ceremony ended in singing the "*Te Deum*." The agreement between them and Columbus was confirmed. An appropriate coat of arms with the Royal arms of Castile and Leon depicted on it was granted to him. The title of *Don* was given to him, his brothers and his descendants. He rode by the king's side, and was served at table as a grandee.

**PARA 13 The Indies granted to Castile by the Pope (May, 1493)**—The Pope Alexander VI granted to the Princes of Castile and Leon and to their successors, the sovereign empire and principality of the

Indies, and of the navigation there with royal dignity and lordship In order to mark off the Spanish and Portuguese sovereignties in the Indies, an imaginary line was drawn by the Pope from pole to pole

**PARAS 14—15 The Indians baptized**—The nine Indians brought by Columbus with him were baptized. So great an importance was attached by the Spaniards of the time to mere formal baptism that one of the Indians who after being baptized died, was said to have been the first of that nation who entered heaven

**PARA 16 A colonial department founded under Fonseca**—A special department for the management of the colonial affairs was founded and committed to the care of Juan de Fonseca, a clergyman who was high in the royal favour **Character of Fonseca**—A shrewd man of business, a severe task-master, a relentless enemy, Fonseca exhibited all the qualities of an unscrupulous tyrant, and caused great hardships to the unfortunate islanders

**PARA 17 Preparations for Columbus's second voyage**—Vigorous preparations began to be made for a second voyage to be undertaken by Columbus 12 caravels, and 5 smaller vessels were made ready, laden with horses, and other animals, plants, seeds and implements for cultivation Artificers of various trades were engaged, and a quantity of gaudy knick-knacks was placed on board Numerous volunteers came forward for the expedition Twelve missionaries, placed under the charge of Bernard Buil, accompanied the voyagers, in order to administer spiritual blessing to the natives of the New World **Instructions to Columbus.**—The admiral was ordered by the sovereigns to labour in all possible ways to convert the Indians to Christianity They were to be treated "lovingly" and honoured with presents Any one treating the Indians ill was to be severely punished by Columbus

**PARA 18 Fonseca's unfriendly attitude to Columbus**—Fonseca made many efforts to thwart Columbus's wishes, but he now being at the height of royal favour, easily baffled them

## CHAPTER VI.

( PAGES 129—141 )

## SECOND VOYAGE OF DISCOVERY.

**PARA. 1. Second voyage, Sep. 25, 1493.—**

*On the 25th September the squadron left Cadiz for the Canary Islands, and after taking in provisions there, sailed from Ferro on the 13th October. The voyage was remarkably prosperous, and the ships came within sight of land on the 3rd November. Arrival at an island, called afterwards Dominica. The day of arrival being a Sunday, the first island to which Columbus came was named Dominica.*

**PARA. 2 Maria Galante, Guadaloupe.**—A small island was called Maria Galante, and a larger one, Guadaloupe which was inhabited by a race of cannibals.

**PARA. 3 Passing several islands, reached Hispaniola.**—After passing Montserrat, Antigua, St Martin, and Santa Cruz, he arrived at a fertile island, then called St John, now Porto Rico. On the 22nd November, the admiral reached Hispaniola and found *the colony and the fort at La Navidad entirely destroyed.* Guacanagari reported that the settlers quarrelled among themselves, and took to evil courses. A neighbouring Indian chief named Caonabo burnt the tower and killed or dispersed the garrison. Guacanagari had done his best to defend the Europeans. The cupidity and profligacy of the settlers were so gross that they fell victims to the vengeance of the natives.

**PARA. 4 Colony founded at Isabella.**—Columbus selected a site for another settlement, about 40 miles to the east of the present Cape Haytien. This he called Isabella. The Spaniards worked hard to build the first European town in the New World. The work did not progress well. Diseases prevailed among the settlers. Their discomforts and fatigues were extreme. Provisions and medicines began to fail, and for some time, Columbus himself was confined to a bed of sickness.

**PARAS 5—15 Columbus's despatch in the form of instructions to Antonio de Torres.**—The admiral sent a despatch containing an account of the state of the colony, to the Court of Spain in January, 1494, in the form of some instructions to one Antonio de Torres, the Receiver of the Colony, who was to wait upon the monarchs to discharge his errand. The despatch began with a complimentary address and a general statement of the discoveries made for which the sovereigns thanked him. Reasons were then set forth to account for his not being able to send more gold, and suggested the building of a fortress near the gold mines,—a proposal approved of by the sovereigns. Then he touched upon the subject of some of the defects in the provisions sent for the settlers, which the sovereigns ordered Fonseca to remedy. *A proposal concerning slavery* was then made. He said that he had sent home some Indians from the Cannibal Islands as slaves to be taught Castilian, and to serve as interpreters and help the work of conversion. He went on to say that by doing so, he would enable them to give up cannibalism, and to gain souls by being converted, and would also be raised high in the estimation of the other Indians. Their Highnesses advised the admiral to see if it could be managed there. He then made a definite proposal for *the establishment of slave-trade*. He suggested that a certain number of caravels should be annually sent with the things necessary for the maintenance of the colony, and the cargoes be paid for in slaves taken from amongst the cannibals. The monarchs rejected the proposal by ordering it to be suspended for the present. It is certainly creditable for them that they rejected the proposal, even at the prospect of great pecuniary gain.

**PARA. 16. Misery and disaffection in the colonies**—The colonies were now in a most disordered state. Sickness prevailed. Men of all ranks were obliged to labour manually, so they were extremely dissatisfied. Complaints were so loudly being made of the severity of his dealing with those under him, that there was a

mutiny headed by Bernal Diaz, which was soon put down **Fort St. Thomas founded**—The colonists were somewhat cheered on hearing of gold mines. Columbus personally went to the mining district of Cibao, where the *Fort* of St. Thomas was built.

**PARA 17 Desire for further discovery**—The sovereigns desired that Columbus should prosecute further discoveries. He therefore nominated a council to manage the government in his absence, which was to be presided over by his brother Don Diego. Don Pedro Margarite was appointed captain-general. He then put to sea on the 24th April, 1494.

## CHAPTER VII. ( PAGES 149—159 )

**PARAS 1—2 Jamaica discovered, 1494.**—The admiral then made many important discoveries, the chief of which were Jamaica, and a group of islands called the "Garden of the Queen." The navigation amongst these islands was so difficult that Columbus had no sleep for 32 days. He then went to San Juan to capture cannibals there. The voyagers then returned to Isabella on the 29th September, 1494.

**PARA. 3 Illness of Columbus.**—At Isabella Columbus remained ill for five months, where he found his brother, Bartholomew Columbus, whose presence gave him much pleasure. Antonio de Forres there arrived with provisions and other necessary things for the colony. **Disorganization of the colony**—Columbus found his colony in a state of disorganization, the Indians having risen against the Spaniards, and Father Buil, Don Pedro Margarite and other leading Spaniards had set sail for home.

**PARA 4 Injudicious command to Margarite.**—Columbus had commanded Margarite, before his departure, to go through the country with four hundred men, with the object of inspiring the natives with awe and of freeing the colony from supporting these four hundred men.



**PARA 5 Oppression of the Indians.**—The Spaniards, under Margarite, went straggling over the country. They consumed the provisions of the poor natives. Waste, rapine, injury and insult attended them everywhere. The Indians were on the look-out for some open outbreak, and had it not been for the timely arrival of Columbus, the Spanish colony in Hispaniola might again have been utterly destroyed.

**PARA 6 Fight with the natives**—Caonabo was now threatening the garrison of the Fort of St Thomas, and Guatignana, the cacique of Macorix, besieged the fort of Magdalena, near Isabella. Columbus marched upon the fort, and utterly defeated the Indians. **Transmission of slaves.**—From Isabella Columbus sent back, on the 24th February 1495, four Spanish ships chiefly laden with Indian slaves, most of whom were captured at the fort of Magdalena.

**PARA 7 Defeat and slaughter of the Indians in the Vega Real**—Caonabo still continued to molest St Thomas. The Spaniards utterly put to flight a host of Indians, assembled on the plains of the Vega Real. A horrible massacre then followed. Many of them were condemned to slavery, Caonabo alone remained at first uncaptured, but was afterwards taken by treachery.

**PARA 8 Cunning capture of Caonabo**—Ojeda captured Caonabo in a very clever but treacherous way. He carried with him gyres and manacles, all made of brass, or steel, exquisitely wrought and well polished, which were highly prized by the Indians, and Ojeda said that he had brought these as a valuable present from the admiral. On the pretext of showing Caonabo how to put them on, Ojeda succeeded in setting him on his own horse and in putting the fetters on him. Ojeda then sat behind Caonabo on horse-back, darted off for Isabella and brought the Indian chief bound before Columbus who sent him to Spain for trial.

**PARA 9: Gold tribute imposed**—These petty fights took place early in 1495. Columbus imposed a tribute upon the whole population of Hispaniola. Every Indian, above 14 years of age and living in or about the min.

ing districts was to pay every three months a little bellful of gold: every-other person was to pay an *arriaba* of cotton. Brass or copper tokens were given to the Indians as a sign of their having paid tribute. **A remarkable Indian scheme.**—Guarionex, cacique of the Vega Real, proposed that he would establish a large farm, extending from Isabella to St. Domingo, for the cultivation of corn and manufacture of bread, provided that his people were exempted from paying the gold tribute. But this proposal was rejected.

**PARA 10—Beginning of the system of Repartimientos.**—These demands were afterwards modified or changed. In 1496, *service* instead of tribute was demanded of certain Indian villages, of which the natives were ordered to make and work the Spanish farms. This is the beginning of the system of *Repartimientos* or *Encomiendas*.

**PARAS. 11—12 Views of Columbus on slavery.**—Long before these insurrections and defeats of the Indians, Columbus formed his views on the question of *slavery*. As early as the 14th October, 1492, while speaking of the construction of a fort, in his diary, he said that it would be all unnecessary, as the Indians were very simple and inoffensive, and that they could be readily taken to Castille, or kept in the island as captives, according as their Highnesses would be pleased to order. *Justification of Columbus.* Columbus was neither an avaricious, nor a cruel man, but on the contrary he was very pious. Slave-trade was not in those days considered very obnoxious, and Columbus was used to it. Moreover he was anxious to reduce, by this means, the expenses of these Indian possessions.

**PARA 13 The scruples of the monarchs to tolerate slave-trade.**—The sovereigns were even then very tender about slavery. They intimated Bishop Fonseca not to receive the sale proceeds of the slaves that were brought by Torres, until they would be enlightened on the propriety of the question by learned theologians and lawyers.

**PARA 14. Distress of the natives.**—Many of the free Indians, intending to starve the Spaniards out,

did not sow or plant anything. Though the Spaniards suffered bitterly from famine, they began to molest the Indians all the more. So a large number of them died of hunger, sickness and distress.

**PARA. 15—16 A Spanish Commissioner of Inquiry (1495.)**—Juan Aguado was sent by the sovereigns as a Commissioner of Inquiry who reached Isabella in October, 1495. The high-handed proceedings of this man made Columbus willing to return to the Court. *Plots to ruin Columbus*. The report given out at home by Buil and Margarite told against the interests of Columbus. They complained of (1) his tyrannical government, (2) his disregard of distinctions of rank, (3) and his excessive zeal for discovery. Evidences to substantiate these charges were not far to seek. Both the Spanish hidalgos and the Indians laid all their miseries at the door of Columbus. **Columbus sets sail for Spain, March 10th, 1496.**—To rebut these charges Columbus left Isabella on the 10th March, 1496, in the '*Nina*,' while Aguado sailed in another ship.

**PARA. 17 Homeward voyage extremely miserable.**—The voyage home was extremely miserable. Provisions failed to such an extent that the crew were prevented, only by the exercise of Columbus's authority, from killing and eating the Caribs who were on board. After a voyage of three months, the two ships entered the Bay of Cadiz, June 11th, 1496, and again after a month's delay Columbus received a summons to proceed to the Court at Burgos. **His reception at court.** Columbus adopted the same means of dazzling the eyes of the people as he had done on the last occasion, but his procession did not receive a hearty reception from the people. The sovereigns, however, seem to have received him kindly. They listened with sympathy to his story of the difficulties, and heard with satisfaction of the recent discovery of the gold mines.

## CHAPTER VIII (PAGES 160—171)

**PARA 1 The scruples of the sovereigns about slavery subsided**—In 1496, Don Bartholomew Co-

lumbus sent to Spain three hundred slaves from Hispaniola. He had previously informed the sovereigns that certain caciques were killing the Castilians, and they had ordered that all those, who should be found guilty, should be sent to Spain

**PARA 2 Criminals sent to the Indies**—In 1497, two injudicious edicts were published by the Catholic sovereigns,—one, authorising the judges to transport criminals to the Indies, the other, allowing criminals to go out, at their own expense, to Hispaniola and to serve for a time under the orders of the admirals

**PARA 3 Repartimientos**—In 1497, letters patent were issued from the sovereigns to the admiral, authorizing him to grant *Repartimientos* of the lands in the Indies to the Spaniards. The Indians had not come to form portion of a *repartimiento* at this period

**PARAS 4—5 Don Bartholomew Columbus's government.**—Don Bartholomew's administration of Hispaniola gave rise to very disastrous results **St. Domingo founded.** In his letters to the Home Government, Columbus had spoken of building a fort in the vicinity of some mines which he had discovered to the south. On his entrance into the Bay of Cadiz, he learnt that their Highnesses had approved of his suggestion. He sent orders to his brother to found this southern settlement. Bartholomew Columbus accordingly proceeded southward and fixed upon a port where he commenced building a fortress which he called St Domingo

**PARAS 6—8 Xaragua penetrated.**—Xaragua was a part of Hispaniola which had not yet been penetrated. It was ruled by a cacique named Bohechio. Intending to enter into Xaragua, the Lieutenant-Governor proceeded at the head of one hundred men. On his intimating that his errand was peaceful, a large body of Indians desisted from fighting. He was conducted some thirty leagues further to the city of Xaragua where he was cordially received and hospitably entertained **Tribute imposed.** The Lieutenant-Governor then demanded tribute of them. It was at last decided that Bohechio should

pay tribute in cotton and cazabi-bread Don Bartholomew then returned to Isabella, and afterwards set out on a journey to his new fort of St Domingo, collecting tribute by the way, when the Spaniards must have suffered much. The Indians complained loudly of the tribute imposed upon them. The great cacique Guarionex headed an insurrection which however was soon put down.

**PARAS 9—10 Discontent of the Spanish colonists**—Messengers from Bohechio and Anacaona informed the Lieutenant Governor that the tribute of that country was ready for him. Accordingly he went to fetch it. During his absence, the discontent among the Spaniards manifested itself distinctly. The adventurers who had come from Europe had now to experience dire disappointment and starvation, and undergo hard labours under the compulsion of some foreigners, instead of having their 'golden dreams' realised. So they broke out into an open *insurrection under the leadership of Roldan*. Columbus, on his departure, had left this Roldan as chief justice in the island. He wished to return to Spain, and demanded that a certain caraval, newly built by the Governor, should be launched for the purpose, which was not practicable for want of tackle. Roldan and his followers became more and more insubordinate, and at last they left Isabella in a body.

**PARAS 11—13 Flight of Guarionex**—The poor islanders were now oppressed both by the rebels and the loyal Spaniards. They were also tempted by Roldan to join him. From all these causes, Guarionex fled to the territories of Maobanex, the cacique of a hardy race. Don Bartholomew pursued the fugitive, and defeating the troops of Maobanex in some petty fights, he sent a messenger to the cacique to inform him that he must give up Guarionex. Maobanex declined to accept the proposal. **The host and the guest**. At this, Don Bartholomew burnt several villages, and came within a short distance of the camp of the cacique, who, in the meantime, convened an assembly of his people, and they urged that Guarionex should be given up. Their generous cacique, however, replied that he would rather suffer all manner of hardships than given

up his guest *Their capture* When Guarionex found that Maobanex's people were not favourably disposed towards him, he left, out of his own will, their territory. Meanwhile, his generous host, with his whole family, was captured and Guarionex himself was shortly afterwards taken, and put in chains at Fort Concepcion.

## CHAPTER IX.

(PAGES 172—189)

**PARAS 1—3 Columbus's third voyage**—The discovery of the continent of America was made during Columbus's third voyage which is still very memorable on account of his sufferings, and the discoveries made. The instructions given by the sovereigns to the admiral in 1497 ran to the effect that the Indians were to be reduced into subjection "benignantly," and converted to Christianity, with the holy sacraments administered to them. *He set sail* from the port of San Lúcar on the 30th May, 1498, with six vessels and two hundred men and the required number of sailors. From Gomera, one of the Canary Islands, Columbus sent three vessels to Hispaniola, intimating their commanders that he was going to the Cape Verde Islands and thence he intended to navigate to the south of those islands, until he should arrive under the equinoctial line.

**PARA 4 Cape Verde Islands**—Columbus reached the Cape Verde Islands on the 27th June, (1498) and left them on the 4th of July. Thence he proceeded to the South-west. He found the floating mass of sea-weed again. The wind was suddenly hushed, and the heat was intolerable and extraordinary, and it lasted eight days.

**PARAS 5—7 Columbus sails westward**—The admiral then took a westerly course. On Sunday, the 22nd July, the sailors saw numbers of birds going from the South-west to the North-east. On Thursday, the 31st July, land was suddenly seen towards the South-west about 15 leagues off. This was named *Trinidad*. The admiral's course had been towards the Carib islands. He now turned towards Trinidad, making for a Cape, which he named "La Galera."

## CHAPTER X.

(PAGES 190—203)

PARA. 1 **Columbus's arrival at Hispaniola.**—

On the 30th August, 1498, Columbus arrived at Hispaniola. He found the colony in a state of utter confusion, which was caused by the revolt of Roldan. Five vessels left the port of St Domingo, laden with six hundred slaves, of whom, two hundred were given to the masters of the ships in payment of freight. **Trade in logwood and slaves proposed.**—In his letters to the sovereigns, Columbus advocated a trade in slaves and logwood. *The plan of slave-barter* proposed by him was as follows:—The colonists were to have money at Seville, proportional to the number of slaves sent, from the masters of the vessels carrying them, who were to pay for their maintenance during the voyage. This money would be spent, according to the orders of the colonists, in buying such goods as might be considered necessary.

PARA. 2 **The Roldan revolt brought to a close.**—The dispute between Roldan's followers and Columbus was, after two years' negotiation, brought to a close. Roldan kept his chief justiceship, and his friends received slaves and land. The admiral gave slaves and *repartimientos* to those followers of Roldan who chose to stay in the island, and placed under a cacique a certain number of *mitas* or *cazabi* shoots, and so many *montones* or small mounds of earth to plant the shoots on, and Columbus ordered that the cacique or his people should till these lands for the owner thereof. The *repartimiento* now consisted not only of lands, but also their tillage. Fifteen of Roldan's followers, who returned to Spain, received a number of slaves.

PARAS 3—4 **The Queen's indignation.**—The queen was extremely indignant at these proceedings of the admiral, and said that he had not been authorised by her to give her vassals to any one. She then had a proclamation made at Seville, Granada and other places that the owners of the Indians given to them by the admiral, and not of those that had been taken in just war and brought

before, should at once, under pain of death, send them (Indians) back to Hispaniola. This proclamation shows that according to Queen Isabella, there were some Indians who could justly be made slaves. This is rather inexplicable, as there is no evidence to prove that the Indians given to Roldan's followers were captured in a different way from those who had been sent over formerly.

**PARA 5 The affairs of Hispaniola.**—Columbus had in the meantime, settled the Roldan revolt, and other smaller ones, the Indians having been reduced into subjection, were now to be brought together in populous villages so as to be taught the Christian faith in a more convenient way, the royal revenues would, he thought, in three years, amount to sixty millions of reals.

**PARA 6 Columbus's enemies working at court.**—Columbus had bitter enemies at court. They were for ever telling tales against him, and suggesting that this foreigner was doing mischief. The unsuccessful adventurers, who had returned from the new world, fanned the flames of the bitter feelings against him. The admiral's son, Ferdinand, has given a vivid picture of some of the charges brought against his father.

**PARA 7 Serious dissatisfaction.**—The clamour against Columbus was supported by serious grounds of dissatisfaction in the state and prospects of the colony. Soon after the arrival of the five vessels from St Domingo which first brought the news of the Roldan revolt, the sovereigns seriously took up the question of suspending Columbus. They at last resolved to send a man who should take the civil as well as judicial authority into his own hands. **Bobadilla appointed Governor vice Columbus, suspended.** Francis de Bobadilla was authorized by them, on March 21, 1499, to proceed legally against the rebels in Hispaniola. On the 21st May, 1499, this officer was appointed Governor and an order was issued that all arms and fortresses in the Indies should be given up to him. On the 26th of the same month the sovereigns gave him a letter to Columbus on the subject.

**PARAS 8—9. Bobadilla's arrival at Hispaniola.**—Bobadilla was not sent from Spain until the begin-



ning of July, 1500, and did not arrive at Hispaniola till the 23rd August of the same year. *His character* Bobadilla's appointment was a sad instance of wrong judgment. From his narrowness of mind and distinctness of prejudice, he was supposed to be high-principled and direct in his dealings. As a governor he was a sad failure on account of his one-sidedness. *His high-handedness.* The first thing that Bobadilla did on his arrival at St. Domingo, was to take possession of Columbus's house, and then to summon the admiral before him. Columbus and his brother offered no resistance, and Bobadilla put them in chains, and sent them to Spain. *Accusations against Columbus* Accusations came thickly against the brothers. The people complained that Columbus had compelled them to work at the new buildings, and starved them, had inflicted severe punishment on men guilty of petty offences, and that he had not baptized the Indians, "because he desired slaves rather than Christians." *Remarks on the complaints* Considering the difficulties he had to encounter, many of these charges, if impartially examined, would have furnished some proofs of his firmness and wisdom as a governor. The charge of not baptising the Indians was perhaps preferred by some clergyman, and most probably came from Europe.

**PARAS. 10—11 Columbus sent home in chains.**—Columbus was sent home in chains. He urged that they must not be taken off, unless by royal command, and would ever keep them by him, ordering that they should be buried with him. In his sorrow, his religious turn of mind, and the thought that posterity would appreciate him and feel for him, comforted him much. Whatever may be said of his general policy, it is a matter of regret that he was removed from his office, when there appeared some chance of solidity in his administration.

## CHAPTER XI.

(PAGES 234—236)

**PARA. I. Columbus's first and second return to Spain contrasted.**—While returning to Spain after his first voyage, Columbus was a conqueror, now he was

a prisoner, then he was the darling of the people, now he was the unpopular victim of base slanderers *Reaction at court in Columbus's favour*—The idea at last struck the Spaniards that Columbus had given Spain a new world, but Spain in return bound him in chains. So there was a reaction of public opinion in his favour. The sovereigns immediately issued orders for his liberation, and invited him to attend the court at Granada, forwarding money to enable him to maintain his rank. They then received him with the usual marks of distinction.

**PARA. 2. King Ferdinand's attitude.**—Ferdinand, however, was rather pleased at his being removed from office. He had repented of the concession by which Columbus was to receive one-eighth of the profits of the newly discovered land and to be its governor. He probably apprehended that Columbus after attaining to power would at last throw off allegiance altogether.

**PARA 3 Columbus pleads his cause before the Queen.**—The Queen granted Columbus a private interview. He pleaded his cause simply but earnestly. He described the difficulties he had to encounter and the intrigues of the enemies, and urged that the accusations were prompted by their disappointed ambition and jealousy.

**PARA. 4. The Queen's reply.**—While she fully appreciated his services and knew the rancour of his enemies, Isabella was afraid that he had given some cause for complaint; he was accused of acting with severity and his act of enslaving a number of innocent Indians was quite contrary to her distinct orders. Consequently the Queen was in a manner compelled to depute a commissioner to investigate matters in the Indies and give her a true report, and to send Columbus home if he was found guilty of excess. She was, however, disappointed in her agent, but she was resolved to punish Bobadilla for his misdeeds, and at that stage she could not promise to reinstate Columbus in his office at once.

**PARA. 5 Bobadilla's tyranny.**—Bobadilla's first object was to discover gold. So he took a census of the natives and assigned them all as slaves to the colonists.

The brutal treatment of the slaves was terrible. Such was the severity of the system that in spite of Bobadilla's reducing the *royalty* from one-third to one-eleventh of the gold found, the revenue increased considerably.

### OVANDO'S GOVERNMENT.

**PARA 6. Ovando appointed governor.** — *His character* — When the sovereigns heard of these cruelties, they selected Ovando as Governor of the Indies. One could judge, from his previous career, that he was well-fitted to rule justly and mercifully. His presence expressed authority, and it was the general impression that he was friendly to justice, humble, honourable both in words and deeds, and that he hated all avarice and covetousness.

**PARAS 7—8 Written instructions to Ovando (1501)** — The monarchs gave Ovando both verbal and written instructions. The written instructions ran to the effect that the Indians should be treated mercifully and as free vassals like those of Castile, they were to pay tribute, and for their helping the Government in getting gold, they were to be paid daily wages, that all those Spaniards who had then been living in the Indies, should at once return and make room for a new set of men; who should go out with Ovando, that no Jews, Moors, or new converts were to go to the Indies or to remain there, but only negro slaves were allowed to migrate to the new world.

**PARA 9 Impeachment of Bobadilla** — Bobadilla was to undergo the ordeal of a "*residencia*" — a kind of examination or general impeachment, to which, authorities, when going out of office, were very often subject.

**PARAS 10—20 Verbal instructions to Ovando, on the duties of a Governor** — On the eve of his departure, Ovando received a lecture upon the duties of a governor. The King, the Queen, and Antonio de Fonseca were present on the occasion. (1) The new governor was to look to what concerned the reverence and worship of God, to the condition and capacity of the men about him and to appointing good men to office, and to a salutary change of authorities now and then. (2) That he should use moderation in making *repartimientos* and tributes, and that his personal

expenses were not to exceed reasonable limits. (3) That he should never make himself judge in a cause, and that culprits were to be tried in the 'ordinary way' (4) That he should not listen to tale-bearers, and should not try to avenge himself under the slightest provocation, but rather evil sayings were best to be overcome by nobleness. (5) That he should grant free audience and liberty of speaking frankly to all his people under all circumstances (6) That he should hold a good example before his people in his own personal deeds and words (7) That he should not be over-inquisitive about knowing the private acts of his people, and that petty offences not duly brought to official notice, should be overlooked (8). That he was to encourage the energetic and discourage the idle. (9) That with regard to liberality, he should conduct himself with due reserve, so that undue liberty might not be taken (10). That, in conclusion, he was to govern as he would be governed, and that he should regulate himself with despatch in business, courage in difficulties, brevity in executing useful determinations, and sober reasoning in all matters, and under all circumstances

**PARA 21 Remarks on the Instructions** — The above instructions testify to the watchful care of the sovereigns for their Indian possessions and to their sagacity which is so manifest that it naturally strikes the learned reader to enquire whether Machiavelli's *Prince* had yet been published and whether King Ferdinand could have read it. Indeed it was about twelve years after that Machiavelli alluded to the *Prince* as a small unpublished work

**PARA 22 Ovando's arrival at St. Domingo** — Leaving the port of San Lucas on the 13th of February, 1502, Nicholas de Ovando reached St Domingo after some difficulty, on the 15th April, and assumed the reins of his new government

**PARA 23 Ovando's administration** — Ovando announced the *residencia* of Bobadilla and placed Roldan under arrest. He tried his best to found settlements along the coast and endeavoured, at first, to carry out the merciful directions of the sovereigns towards the Indians

*Ovando and Columbus contrasted.*—Ovando was a knight of a religious order with a certain narrowness of views incident to his profession with no special culture and with little originality of character. Columbus, on the other hand, was a man of various accomplishments, large-minded enthusiastic, fluent, affectionate and inventive. Columbus had always treated the natives with humanity and consideration, Ovando soon began to rule them with an iron hand.

PARAS. 24—25. **An Indian reception.**—Anacaona, the Queen of Xaragua, had received the Admiral's brother, Don Bartolome, on a former occasion. She is said to have entreated her brother (Bohechio) to obey the Christians. *Peter Martyr's account of Anacaona's reception of the Adelantado.*—Peter Martyr furnishes an account of Anacaona's reception of the Adelantado. The Queen and her brother received the lieutenant with all courtesy and honour. They brought the Spaniards to their common hall. Here, after many amusements and exhibitions, suddenly there appeared in a large plain near the hall two great armies of soldiers, who began to fight fiercely in all earnestness. This deadly fight would have continued longer, had not the king, at the request of the Spaniards, stopped it.

PARAS 26—29. **Ovando's visit to Xaragua.**—In 1503 some of Roldan's old followers were settled in Xaragua and were a great trouble to the colony. There were constant disturbances between these Spaniards and the adjacent Indians. The Spaniards informed the governor that the Indians of Xaragua intended to rebel. Ovando resolved to take a journey to Xaragua which was 70 leagues off from St Domingo. The governor set out well accompanied with 70 horsemen and 300 foot-soldiers. **Anacaona's reception of Ovando.**—Anacaona, as on the former occasion, went out with a concourse of her subjects and with the usual festivities, to meet Ovando. Various pleasures and amusements were provided for the strangers. The former followers of Roldan who were about the governor told him that there certainly was an insurrection at

hand, and that it should at once be quelled. **A pretended tournament, and massacre of Indian chiefs.**—Being thus convinced that an insurrection was intended, Ovando ordered that on a certain Sunday, after dinner, 'all the cavalry should get to horse, on the pretext of a tournament. The infantry, too, he caused to be ready for action. The poor Indian Queen rushed, most innocently, into the snare prepared for her. She with all her caciques came to the quarters of Ovando to witness the tournament. Meanwhile the Spanish cavalry surrounded the building and the foot-soldiers were stationed at certain commanding positions, and it so happened that on a sign being made by the governor, the Spaniards all at once rushed in and bound the caciques and Anacaona. All the chiefs were burnt alive, Ovando's quarters having been set fire to, and Anacaona, was afterwards hanged and the province was desolated. Finally, the governor collected the former followers of Roldan in Xaragua and formed a town which he named "*The city of the true peace*"

---

**PARA 30. Columbus's fresh enterprise.**—Columbus in the meantime was not inactive. He had formed a theory that there existed some strait through which a passage might be made from the neighbourhood of St. Domingo to the golden regions of Asia. He pressed the sovereigns to provide him with ships for a fresh expedition, having for its fresh object the discovery of this strait. He seems to have written to Ferdinand reproaching him with the treatment he had received at his hands. **Ferdinand's letter to Columbus.** King Ferdinand wrote a very kind letter to Columbus, perhaps in reply to the above, which was well calculated to pacify his anger. The letter confirmed all the privileges of the Admiral, assuring him that his children would enjoy all of them and permitting him to set out on the proposed expedition without delay.

**PARAS. 31—33. The new voyage—Its danger.** On the 9th May, preparations were complete and Columbus set sail from Cadiz with his brother, Don Bartho-

lomeu, and his second son, Fernando After a prosperous voyage, he reached Martinique on the 13th June. His largest ship requiring repairs, Columbus asked Ovando for shelter at the harbour of St Domingo, which was denied him. At this time, Columbus foresaw a hurricane and predicted it in due time; but Ovando disregarding his suggestion, caused a fleet to depart for Spain, which contained the richest cargo that had ever been sent from the Indies, particularly a large nugget of gold worth about £416. But a day after its departure, the Admiral's prediction became terribly verified A furious tornado swept over the seas Of all the ships only one, which contained the property of Columbus, reached Spain safe, of the rest, a few vessels somehow managed to return to the island, and the greater number foundered at sea.

**PARA. 34 Jamaica passed**—Columbus, however, succeeded in keeping his fleet safe by sailing along the coast From the port of Azua, to the west of San Domingo, he proceeded to Jaquimo and after refitting his ships, set sail for Jamaica on July 14th, 1502 Passing that island, he met with varying winds and contrary currents in the archipelago of reefs, called the Queen's Garden

**PARA 35 Insubordination of crews**—Owing to the slowness of progress, his crews set up a clamour for the abandonment of the expedition. By degrees it amounted to insubordination but it was soon put down by Columbus with his usual cleverness

**PARA. 36—37. An Indian vessel, and an Indian pilot**—They soon reached the little island of Guana-ja, about 40 miles from Truxillo, on the coast of Honduras. Here they came across a number of Indians in a strange-looking canoe with a cargo of indigenous articles of trade. From among these Indians, Columbus selected one who agreed to accompany him as pilot, and indicated by signs his knowledge of a land, not far distant, lying towards the east, where there were all the marks of civilisation, and which Columbus interpreted as the long-sought-for kingdom of Cathay Had he not been misled by this Indian pilot, and had he steered steadily to the west for a few

hours more, he would have reached Mexico, and been rewarded for his labours with its boundless riches

**PARA 38. Arrival at Cape Gracias a Dios**—Sailing along the coast of Honduras, Columbus reached Cape Gracias a Dios on September 12. A month later he entered several bays on the Isthmus of Panama where he procured provisions, and refitted his vessels, but did not receive any information either about Cathay or the Strait *Attitude of the natives*—The natives whom he met with were generally disposed to be friendly. On one occasion, however, a notary while taking down notes of the conversation held with one of the tribes, gave rise to a great alarm, the operation of writing having been regarded by the natives as a spell.

**PARA 39. Easterly course abandoned**—On the 5th December, the Admiral resolved to abandon his easterly course. Now he encountered a severe storm which much affected his disabled ships. At last after much difficulty, the Admiral gained the mouth of a river which he named Bethlehem

**PARA 40 Gold-producing territory of Quibia.**—A Cacique named Quibia whose territory contained much gold, outwitted the Spaniards by conducting them to the gold mines of a rival cacique under the pretext of leading them to those of his own. However, they acquired here much gold and fancied the land to have been the Aurea Chersonesus of Solomon. *A settlement formed*—First a *depôt* then a village of huts near the mouth of the Bethlehem, were formed for convenience in collecting gold. Before the formation of the settlement, Columbus returned to Spain for supplies

**PARA 41 War between the Spanish settlers and the natives**—Rumours having reached the Adelantado of a projected attack on the settlement by the natives, he seized Quibia in his own palace, and kept him as a hostage for peace. But while being conveyed down the river, he managed to spring overboard and to escape by swimming under water to the shore. Henceforward the struggle between the settlers and the natives became all the more terrible. *An attack by the Indians.*—A boat's crew of eleven



Spaniards who had sailed some way up the river, were attacked by savages in canoes and all the Spaniards were killed except one who carried the news to the settlement

**PARA 42 The settlers in a desperate situation**—The river being dried up, it was impossible for the caravel left with the settlers to cross the bar. They were in despair for not being able to carry the news of their condition to the Admiral, who was ignorant of their desperate situation. At last a bold pilot named Ledesma offered to attempt to swim to the shore, succeeded in his attempt, communicated with the Adelantado and conveyed the news of the desperate state of affairs to the Admiral. *The settlement abandoned*—The result was that all the settlers were taken on board the squadron, as it was found necessary to abandon the settlement, and the caravel inside the harbour bar.

**PARA 43 Their departure**—Now there was no time to lose. Proceeding to Porto Bello, Columbus quitted the coast on May 31, and sailed northward towards Cuba, and in the middle of June, he arrived off the southern coast of Cuba where he obtained supplies of provisions from friendly natives.

## CHAPTER XII.

(PAGES 237—251)

**PARAS 1—2 Stay at Santa Gloria in Jamaica**—Contrary winds compelled Columbus to steer his course for Jamaica, and in the harbour of Santa Gloria he built temporary huts for the crew, on the deck, of the ships by running them ashore. In order to maintain peace and amity with the natives Columbus strictly forbade the Spaniards to go ashore without permission. Diego Mendez proceeded into the interior of the island and succeeded in establishing a regular market for the periodical supply of provisions.

**PARAS 3—4. Their critical position**—Their position was most critical. The journey through the midst of hostile Indian tribes to the easternmost point of Jamaica would not have been safe, but the greatest obstacle in the way of communicating with the Govt.

of Hispaniola was the intervening strait of 40 leagues' breadth, full of breakers and rushing currents. **A messenger sent to Ovando.** Diego Mendez came forward to undertake the almost impossible task of crossing the strait in a canoe, as the bearer of a letter from the Admiral to Ovando, asking him for a ship to release them, and of a despatch to the sovereigns. **Despatch to the sovereigns** In the despatch to the sovereigns Columbus gave a detailed account of his voyage and a glowing description of the riches of Veragua. The despatch was characterised by the writer's strong religious zeal and fanatical superstition. Describing his reflections during a storm, he breaks into a rhapsody. He hears a mysterious voice in his vision which points out to him, with a stern rebuke, the contrast between the goodness of God and his own bad faith, in a way which ought to have touched Ferdinand nearly.

#### PARA. 5 **Observations on his religious zeal.**

—Although this alleged vision may, at first sight, appear as only a device "to catch the conscience of the king," yet we should bear in mind that Columbus lived in an age far different from ours. He was as credulous as his contemporaries on the subject of the supernatural. It was not unnatural for his fertile imagination to give to wild fancies the character of special revelations from God.

#### PARAS 6—7 **Capture of Mendez**—Mendez ac-

companied by a Spaniard and six Indians, set out along the coast, and arrived at the easternmost Cape of Jamaica. A tribe of savages attacked the party, and carried them as captives. **His escape and safe arrival.** Mendez, however, managed to effect his escape and to return to Santa Gloria in safety. He again set out on the 17th July, 1503, being escorted by the Adelantado, and Fieschi, a Genoese mariner for some time, and then proceeded alone to St. Domingo, leaving his companions at Cape Tiburon. Being informed here, that the governor had left for Xaragua, he made his way thither alone to represent to Ovando the necessity of sending speedy relief to the

Admiral It was with reluctance that Ovando, at length empowered Mendez to proceed to St. Domingo to purchase a ship for Columbus

**PARA 8. Suspense of the Admiral; the Mutiny of Porras**—Month after month rolled on, still the unfortunate Spaniards at Santa Gloria received no tidings from Hispaniola. Discontent prevailed amongst them At last, in January, 1504, there broke out an open mutiny headed by Francesco Porras, who told Columbus that the people had determined to go away at once. The Admiral tried to soothe the mutineers by a temperate speech, but to no purpose Taking possession of the newly purchased canoes, they set out on their journey towards Hispaniola

**PARAS 9—10 Misconduct of the meetineers.**—As they proceeded on their journey, the mutineers committed serious outrages upon the natives, which destroyed the salutary effect of Columbus's conciliatory policy Thrice they attempted to cross over to Hispaniola, and thrice they failed, in consequence of bad weather Abandoning, as hopeless, there design of reaching Hispaniola, the mutineers roamed over the island, committing excesses in all possible ways **Its bad effects.** The influence of this misconduct was obvious (1) The trinkets and beads having lost the charm of novelty, the circulating medium became so depreciated that provisions were hardly available (2) The unbounded respect for the Europeans had given way to contempt, and the Indians refused to supply their wants any longer

**PARAS 11—12 Situation bettered by a prediction.**—Columbus knew, from his astronomical knowledge, that on a certain night a lunar eclipse would take place In order to re-establish his influence over the Indians, he assembled the chiefs and reproached them with refusing to supply the Spaniards with provisions He told them that the moon should change her colour that very night in testimony of the divine vengeance that would fall on them At the appointed time the prediction was verified, and the frightened Indians implored Columbus's intercession Soon the shadow having passed away from the

face of the moon, the savages, out of gratitude, continued to supply the Spaniards with provisions

**PARA 13 'Ovando's despatch.**—Eight months after the departure of Mendez, a small caravel anchored one evening just outside the harbour of Santa Gloria. A certain Diego de Escobar, standing at a distance from Columbus shouted a message from Ovando, wherein he expressed his sympathy for the castaways and promised to send a ship soon to take them off. Ovando also sent a letter with a small cask of wine and a side of bacon, as a "slight mark of his friendship." The Admiral wrote a polite letter to Ovando in reply and sent it through D'Escobar.

**PARA 14 'Conciliatory overtures to mutineers.**—Columbus represented himself as having refused to depart with D'Escobar, because the caravel was too small to carry them all away. He made overtures for a reconciliation to Porras, which were scornfully rejected, and the messengers were sent back with threats of force.

**PARAS 15—17 'The dispute brought to an issue.**—Resolving to anticipate an attack which Porras intended to make upon the ships and stores, the Adelantado sallied out with fifty men to engage the mutineers. In furious struggle that ensued, the rebels sustained a complete defeat, Porras himself having been carried off as a captive to the ships. The Europeans were certainly lowered in the estimation of the Indians for resorting to arms for deciding their quarrel. This complete victory made the rebels at once submit to the Admiral, who consented to pardon them, reserving their ring-leader, Porras, for future punishment.

## CHAPTER XIII.

(PAGES 255—262)

### THE CLOSING SCENE.

**PARAS. 1—2 'Arrival at St. Domingo.**—It was not till the 28th of June, 1504, that the Spaniards were delighted to see two caravels,—one sent by Mendez, the other by Ovando to their relief. Contrary winds prevent-

ed the two vessels from reaching St Domingo before the 13th of August **Differences with Ovando.** Columbus was received by Ovando with the most punctilious courtesy, but differences soon arose as to the conflicting jurisdictions of the viceroy and the governor, specially regarding the case of Porras, whom Ovando insisted upon releasing from custody. The governor moreover announced his intention of holding an enquiry as to the particulars of the revolt of Porras. Columbus disputed the right of the governor to take upon himself the office of judge in such a matter. This dispute was particularly detrimental to the private interests of Columbus, the revenues of whose property in the island had been collected under the authority of the governor. **Leaves for Spain.** Columbus was therefore anxious to return to Spain, and started homeward in the vessel which had brought him from Jamaica.

**PARAS 3—4 Decline of his fortune.**—His evil star was now in the ascendant. Twice his vessel nearly foundered. His health was shattered by repeated attacks of gout. He arrived at Seville on the 7th November, 1504, in the most miserable plight. He could scarcely expect encouragement from the sovereigns, as he had not succeeded in accomplishing the object of his expedition, had lost his ships, and brought no gold. Porras was released, and had influence at court which enabled him to excite prejudice against Columbus.

**PARAS. 5—6 Death of Queen Isabella, November 26, 1504.**—Prostrated by sickness, ruined in fortune, Columbus was now to receive the death-blow. He remained at Seville, and being too unwell to make a journey himself, he sent his son Diego to court to manage his affairs for him. He was sorely grieved at heart not to have received any news from court. The cup of his misery was full to the brim by the dread event of Queen Isabella's death, which happened on the 26th November, 1504. **Oppression of the Indians.** The great benefactress of the Indians had now passed away. Notwithstanding all her strict orders for the well-being of the Indians, their condition was far from being satisfactory. They were

enslaved, received neither spiritual instruction, nor wages for their labour. They were treated like dogs and they literally starved for want of proper maintenance.

**PARA. 7. Petition of Columbus & Ferdinand's injustice.**—Ever since his return from the fourth voyage, Columbus had done little else than petition and negotiate about his rights. He proposed to sacrifice the arrears of his revenue and urged that Diego should be made viceroy of the Indies in accordance with the terms of the agreement. Not flatly refusing, Ferdinand only temporized and referred the matter to the Board of Discharges of the Royal Conscience which also acted according to the known wishes of the king.

**PARAS. 8—9 The closing scene of his life**—His old age was followed by endless misery. Poverty with high station and debt and the delay of suitorship at the close of his career were too galling for him. Shortly after the arrival of Philip and his queen, Columbus had written to their Highnesses, deploring his inability to come to them, through illness, and to offer them a most valuable service. **His death, May 20, 1506.**—But on the 20th May, 1506, Columbus died at Valladolid. His remains were brought to Seville and buried in the monastery of Las Cuevas, afterwards they were removed to St. Domingo, and in modern times, were carried to the Cathedral of Havana

---

## NOTES

ON

## HELPS' LIFE OF COLUMBUS.

### CHAPTER I.

**Page 1.** *Seen by the light* ones —The ocean possesses many real objects of dread, but not any fanciful ones, as has been proved by our growing knowledge derived from

the cultivation of science in modern times, and actual acquaintance with facts *Geographical knowledge slumber*—There had been an utter standstill in the pursuit of geographical studies for ages together, but now there had just set in only a fresh activity in this direction *The wildest dreams*—The most extravagant fancies *Fiction*,—unreal or imaginary stories *Fact*,—actual events and things *Legends*,—unfounded narratives handed down from olden times, traditions *Monsters of the deep*—Animals of abnormal size or shape living in the sea *Jealous territory*, Always suspiciously apprehensive of their respective domains being encroached upon *Load-stone*,—(Lit stone that *leads* or *directs*), magnetic non-ore, having the properties of attracting iron, turning toward the north when freely suspended, and communicating these properties to iron or steel, thus forming artificial magnets

**Page 2.** *Extract*—Draw out *Stagnant*,—motionless, not running in a current **Flying islands**,—As for instance, the Island of St Brandon, or San Borandán, a flying island, some ninety leagues in length, west of the Canaries So late as 1721, Spain sent an expedition in quest of this fabulous island In old French geographical charts, it is placed 5° west of Ferro Island, of 29° N Lat *All combined supernatural*,—All these fictitious tales went together to clothe the unknown region (—the unexplored lands and seas) with the imaginary dreads of a world not guided by the laws of nature *Deter*,—prevent *Crept*,—steered their courses slowly *Were but ill-fitted Atlantic*,—Were only too awkwardly built and imperfectly equipped to stand the fury of the huge waves of the Atlantic Ocean *To bear the brunt of*,—to endure the violence of *The now-indispensable sextant*,—the sextant, which is essentially necessary for navigation in modern times **The Sextant**,—(Lit the sixth part of a circle),—An instrument for measuring the angular distances of objects by reflection, so called because, its limb comprehends sixty degrees, or the sixth part of a circle **As-trolabe**,—A circular instrument for observing the stars A projection of the sphere upon a plane, with a graduated

rim and sights for taking altitudes of the sun and the stars, was known as an Astrolabe in the palmy days of Astrology **The Compass**,—An instrument, often called the *Mariner's Compass*, used for directing and ascertaining the course of ships at sea. It consists of a circular box, containing a paper card marked with thirty-two points of direction, and fixed on a magnetic needle, that always points to the north, the variation excepted. The needle, with the card attached to it, turns on a pivot in the centre of the box, which is covered with glass.

*Who indeed but imperfectly . . . properties*,—"The directive power of the magnet seems to have been unknown in Europe till late in the 12th century. It appears, however, on very good authority, that it was known in China and throughout the East generally, at a very remote period. The Chinese annals indeed assign its discovery to the year 2634 B. C. According to one account, a knowledge of the compass was brought to Europe by Marco Polo. It was long contended that the compass, as a nautical instrument, was first invented by Flavio Gioja, a native of Amalfi, about the year 1362. For this there is no authority whatever, as the compass was known as a nautical instrument before his time." —*Encyclopædia*.

*Would not the voyage home . . . mountain of sea?*—It was believed that a ship sailing from the coast would go down a great height of water, so a homeward voyage would be an impossible task of perpetually ascending the top of the mountain of sea.

**Page 3.** *Omne ignotum pro magnifico*,—Everything, unknown is all the more magnificent. *But for the impulse*,—had it not been for the impetus. *The only true and saving faith*,—The only true religion which could give salvation. *But on the other . . . traders*,—But let it not be imagined that our object was only to carry on trade. *It is, however, but just to acknowledge*,—It is, however, only doing bare justice to these explorers to admit *Motive*—impelling principle.

**Page 4.** *Heathen*—(Lit.—dweller of heaths,—hence, rustic) Pagan, idolator. *Efficacy*,—the capability of producing the desired effect. **Mere formal communion with the Church**,—The act of embracing the doctrines of Christianity only by undergoing the mere outward



ceremonial of baptism, and not necessarily the real conversion of the soul. *The fatal consequences* .. *contumunion*,—The horrible results arising from not receiving, at least, the formal initiation into the Christian Church — (*Note*—A heathen, however pious, was, according to the popular belief of the 15th century, sure to be doomed to eternal damnation, for want of his communion with the Church, while, a nominal Christian, however wicked, could not but obtain salvation) · *Wonderful inconsistency*,—Strange and unaccountable incompatibility of doctrines with personal conduct *Account for*,—explain *Oversights*,—mistakes **And the maintenance had in view**,—The fact that people professed such religious tenets will go very satisfactorily to explain how really noble-minded persons committed strange mistakes in adopting measures for carrying into effect those very church doctrines, blinded as they were by the dazzling splendour and overwhelming importance of the principal object aimed at [N B—For instance Queen Isabella, ordered that the Jews should be expelled, from her dominions and the Inquisition should be established, simply for promoting the cause of Christianity These inhuman measures were adopted by her, because she was under the impression that *the laudable end would sanctify the cruel means*] *Debased*,—degenerated *Religious fanaticism*,—Wild and extravagant zeal for religion, amounting even to madness. *Love of adventure*,—Instinctive fondness for a bold and hazardous mode of life *Craving for novelty*,—natural yearning after the enjoyment of new scenes and pleasures

**Page 5.** *Nothing trite*, *description*,—There was nothing in the adventure that was rendered stale and uninteresting by frequent and hackneyed description given beforehand **Amazons**,—Female warriors who cut off their right breast to enable them to use their weapons better, warlike or masculine women **Mystic islands**,—such as, the *Island of St. Brandon* (*See Flying islands*, P. 2), the *Island of the Seven Cities*, said to have been founded by seven bishops who had quitted Spain during the dominion of the Moors, or, the *Islands of the Blessed*

called by the Greeks "Happy Islands," and by the Romans, "Fortunate Islands." These are imaginary islands somewhere in the west, where the favourites of the gods are conveyed at death, and dwell in everlasting joy. "*Forms of a lower hemisphere*,"—Creatures and things of the other half of the globe; they were believed to have their bottom turned upwards. (*See Text P. 66.*) *Fountains of perpetual youth*,—One such fountain was believed to be in one of the Bahama Islands. It was supposed to possess the power of restoring youth. *Mirage*,—An optical illusion, rising from an unequal refraction, causing remote actions to be seen double, as if reflected in a mirror, or to appear as if suspended in the air. (Here)—a hazy and indistinct impression. *Our infant world*,—The then known world, as it was partly discovered, and so much smaller in size.

*Those two continents*,—viz —North and South America. *Square massive-looking* South-east,—Australia.

*Its Days of penal settlements*,—Its colonisation by convicts was first proposed after the separation of the American colonies from England. A convict colony was first formed in New South Wales. Capt A Phillip, the first governor, arrived at Botany Bay with 800 convicts, on the 20th January, 1788. Between the years 1820 and 1830, the system of transporting convicts from England to Australia was at its full perfection. In 1840, transportation to New South Wales came to an end. The discontinuance of transportation to Australia was announced on the 10th February, 1853, but by an act passed in 1857 transportation to Western Australia has been renewed. *Golden fortunes*,—Gold was first discovered in Australia by Mr Edward Hargraves, on the 12th February, 1851. The gold fever soon became general, and the gold, since found in large blocks and in numerous places, has been of enormous amount. The "Victoria nugget," a mass of virgin gold, weighing 340 ounces, was brought to England, from Australia, at this time.

**Page 6.** *Inverted*,—turned upside down. *Cone*,—a solid figure having a circle for its base, and its top terminating in a point or vertex. *Scimitar shape*,—shape like that of a short curved sword, with a convex edge. *Running*,—causing to pass. *Doing the work of destructions*,—Describing the world by a negative process, i. e., by taking away, cancelling, or cutting off its portions. *Hippogriffs*,—

Fabulous animals, half horse, and half griffin, winged horses *Anthropophagi*,—(Gr *anthropos*, man, *phago*, to eat) Man-eaters, Cannibals

**The idea of the . escaped his tyrant**,—The popular notion that the Roman empire extended over the whole earth contracts a little, & c, does not remain as exalted as before, when we come to know how small the then known world was, and we begin to think that when Ovid, the celebrated Latin poet, was persecuted by Emperor Augustus, and was ordered by him to be banished to the banks of the Euxine Sea, he might have escaped the grasp of his persecutor (Emperor Augustus), had he been aware of the entire extent of the world, which was still left undiscovered, and the followers of the Emperor might not have pursued him, on account of their mistaken notion of the limits of the earth [Foot note *The slave of imperial despotism*,—An unfortunate man, upon whom the penalties of the despotic government of Rome were inflicted, whether by confinement to the royal prisons of Rome, or by banishment to the far-off dreary lands,—had only to suffer miseries in silence, and patiently to await death for putting an end to them]

**Page 8.** *The ascertained confines*,—the known limits *The good Plantagenet blood without avail to a man*,—The noble disposition which he had inherited from his noble ancestors, on his mother's side, belonging to the Plantagenet line of the sovereigns of England, had much to do with a man (Prince Henry), &c The plantagenets were a race of fourteen English kings from Henry II, 1154, to Richard III., killed at the battle of Bosworth, in 1485 They were so called, because Geoffrey of Anjou, Henry's father, wore, as his device, a sprig of *planta-genista*, or broom-plant *Insatiate efforts*,—unwearied endeavours **Capture of Ceuta**,—Ceuta was taken from the Moors of Africa, in 1415 The occasion for the campaign was this. The three sons of King John I. of Portugal, were anxious to receive the honour of knighthood It was suggested that an invasion of the Moorish city of Ceuta would offer an honourable and fitting opportunity for con-

ferring the rank of knighthood upon the princes, while it would be carrying the sword of the avenger into the country of their former conquerors, and opening a door to the advance of Christianity. *Septem*—a misprint for *septem* (Sans, *सप्त sapta*, seven) so called from its seven hills *The town which eastern world*,—This city, in olden times, called *Septa* (from the seven hills in it), had been partly constructed and fortified by the Emperor Justinian. It was the principal port of Morocco, being the centre of commerce between Damascus, Alexandria, and other eastern places, and the nations of Western Europe. Its position was one of great importance, for in all the invasions of Spain and Portugal, it had been the point of muster for the Moorish armies and rendezvous of the corsairs.

**Page 9.** *Planted a firm foot*,—Secured a permanent possession. *His aims however*, , *conquering soldier*,—His aspirations, were, however, turned to a goal far higher and nobler than the ordinary and low-thoughted aim of a warrior of making conquests only. *For that age of the world*,—Considering the scantiness of learning of that comparatively less enlightened age of the world, viz, the 15th century. *Shew'd conjectures*—Clever guesses. *Fables of chivalry*,—Tales of noble and romantic deeds of heroes. *It belonged therefore, to great men and princes*,—Such tasks of hazard and uncertain results, should properly be taken up by princes and great men.

**Page 10** *Is driven to to him*,—Is impelled to undertake the enterprise, even if the nature of the undertaking be not congenial to him.

**Page 11** *Well-grounded*,—Well-founded. **That forbidding negative**,—That point,—the name of which signifies a negative word,—which was considered as the furthest (southern) limit of the then known world, and so impossible to be passed. *Rested*,—Remained satisfied. *The rising speaks of white sail*,—The dimly visible appearances of white sails of the ships rising above the horizon. *Dream of promise*,—a dream foreshadowing the realisation of his cherished hopes. *A contemporary chronicle*,—an annalist living at the same time.

**Page 12** *Molestation*,—annoyance, persecution

**The Moors**,—Natives of the northern coast of Africa, comprising Morocco, Tunis, Algiers, &c, called by the Romans, from the colour of the people, *Mauritania*, the country of dark-complexioned people *That circumstance*,—viz, that of giving them shelter. *More on account of its substance*,—More for the expectation it held out, than for the actual benefit derived from it *Rabbit*,—a well-known small animal, allied to the hare, which feeds on grass, and other herbage, and *burrows* in the earth *Multipled*,—increased in number *Bare*,—naked, i e, destitute of vegetation

**Page 13** *That origin of so* in the likeness,—

The act of distinguishing the points of difference in the midst of similarity, being the cause of so much discovery N B—Had they remained satisfied by considering “this something” to be a cloud, like which it seemed at first from Porto Santo, Madeira would not have been discovered by them) *Making for*,—proceeding in the direction of *Captaincies*,—Offices of captain *Did not make much of his captaincy*,—Did not turn the advantages of his position (as a captain) to good account *Endeavouring to make head against the rabbits*,—Exerting his strenuous efforts to exterminate the breed of rabbits *Plague*,—(Lat)—a stroke or blow from God, any great natural evil or calamity **A plague of locusts**,—One of the ten plagues inflicted by God upon the Egyptians for persecuting the Israelites

“And the locusts went up over all the land of Egypt and rested in all the coasts of Egypt: very grievous were they For they covered the face of the whole earth, so that the land was darkened, and they did eat every herb of the land, and all the fruit of the trees which the hail had left: and there remained not any green thing in the trees, or in the herbs of the field, through all the land of Egypt” *Exodus X 14, 15.*

*Pecundity*,—fruitfulness; power of producing young in great numbers *Exterminate*,—Destroy utterly. *Cosmographical*,—geographical (Gr *Cosmos*, universe, *grapho*, I write) *Had been at pains to accumulate*,—Had been labouring hard to collect.

**Page 14** *Untoward*,—Unfavourable *That which* .  
*.. island, viz., wood. Overshadowed*,—sheltered. *Deficient*,  
 —unavailable *Temporalities*,—Revenues of an ecclesiastic  
 proceeding from lands, tenements, or lay-fees, tithes and  
 the like *Spiritualities*,—Matters relating to the church

**Knights of Christ**,—When the Templars were expelled from France, they were received into Portugal, and their order revived, in 1317, under the title of "*the Order of Our Lord Jesus Christ*" With some difficulty, Pope John XXII was induced to sanction the new order The knights of the Order of Christ joined the Portuguese in all their crusades, against the infidel, and also in their African and Indian expeditions, receiving, in compensation continual additions to their own possessions At length, their wealth and power excited the jealousy of the kings of Portugal, their future acquisitions, and subsequently even their actual possessions, were declared to be crown possessions, and the offices of Administrator and Grand-master were transferred to the crown *Which could not* . *.. success*, which was sure to make his efforts successful

**Many a Swiss peak . the African coast**—Like a lofty peak of the Alps in Switzerland, each headland of the African coast beyond Cape Nam presented itself in three different aspects to the voyagers First, it appeared, from a distant view, as altogether unapproachable, like an Alpine peak, viewed more closely, the attempt to pass it was pronounced, like the ascent of a lofty peak of the Alps, as a very dangerous affair, but when the mariners persevered in steering their course onward, not being daunted by the seeming difficulty of the task, they at last succeeded in passing the headland, and the cruise was afterwards pronounced a most pleasant one But on the first view, each headland invariably appeared to be altogether unapproachable, and to prove an obstacle to the voyage of exploration down the coast of Africa

**Page 15.**—*Fierce currents*,—fearful currents or streams of water in the ocean, like the *North African and Guinea current*, the *Equatorial current* and the *Gulf Stream* But was much beyond it,—But the formidableness of the cape was due more to the fancied notion, entertained by the mariners, of the land and sea beyond it, than to the actual dangers of the place, (*viz.* the rocks and currents.) *Brought in*,—made use of, employed *Bar*,—obstacle, barrier *Whet*,—

(Lit), to rub for the purpose of sharpening, hence, to stimulate to excite *Appetite*,—(here) earnest desire or solicitude *Not winning the common voice*,—Not being able to secure the approbation of the people at large

**Page 16.** *To break it up*,—to plough it *Author*,—creator *Now dispossessing them of the island*,—Now driving the men, in a manner, out of the island, (by eating up all vegetable, and thus depriving them of their sustenance) *Captiousness*,—fault-finding spirit *The criticism of bystanders upon action*,—The idle and thoughtless remarks of mere lookers-on, upon a particular action in which they do not take part, and of which the real difficulty they can hardly realise

**Page 17** *False assertion knowledge Providence*,—Dogmatic and hence false declaration of the really inscrutable and mysterious ways and means of God, presumptuously assumed to be definite without any substantial data *Still it were as wise*,—Although the above remarks seem to be unreasonable, in the main, yet there are some very wise ones in them, and it would be highly gratifying if other criticisms also contained as much reason as they do *The common tale*,—the popular criticism *Which spoke* *own resources*,—which appertained to the subject of keeping their own people from emigrating to foreign lands, so that they might be in a position to develop their own means and contrivances *Had a wisdom the peninsula*,—was reasonable enough, inasmuch as it involved a principle of economy best calculated to foster the growth of a self-reliant nation which was unknown to the Portuguese of that time, and the want of which was keenly felt by them in later times *Diverted*,—turned to a different channel *In his eyes*,—In his estimation or opinion *Inconsequent in the extreme*,—Extremely fallacious, not based upon sound logical grounds *Misgivings*,—doubts *Chagrin*,—(pronounced *sha-grin*), vexation, ill-humour *Incitement*,—impulse *"Virtuous obstinacy"*,—steadfastness of purpose proceeding from a noble desire

**Page 18** *You cannot* . *much greater* —I assure you most emphatically, that the greater the magni-

tude of the dangers you will meet, the stronger will be the chance of your valour being rewarded, on your return. *That you have all taken up,*—With which you have all been possessed *Frandes*,—another version has, *Flanders The needle*,—the magnetic needle of the mariner's compass

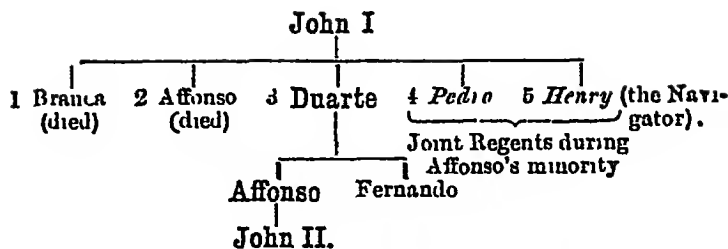
**Page 19.** *Bring out of*,—Derive from the voyage *Stirring words*,—Spurred language fit to rouse the nobler impulses of the heart *To efface the misadventure*,—To wipe away the blot in his good name, caused by the fruitlessness of his late enterprise **A labour of Hercules**,—A difficult undertaking like one of the twelve labours imposed by Eurystheus, king of Argos, upon Hercules, the great mythical hero of Greece The following are the twelve labours of Hercules —(1) To slay the Nemean lion (2) To kill the Lernean hydra (3) To catch and retain the Arcadian stag (4) To destroy the Eurymanthian boar (5) To cleanse the stables of king Augeas (6) To destroy the cannibal birds of the lake Stympheis (7) To take captive the Cretan Bull (8) To catch horses of the Thracian Diomedes (9) To get possession of the girdle of Hippolyte, the queen of the Amazons (10) To take captive the Oxen of the monster Geryon (11) To get possession of the apples of the Hesperides (12) To bring up from the infernal regions the three-headed dog Cerberus **The promised land**,—The unexplored region which he hoped to discover, through the grace of God It is a Biblical phrase —“And the Lord appeared unto Abram, and said, unto thy seed *will I give this land* and there builded he an altar unto the Lord ” *Genesis, XII, 7*, see also, *Genesis, XXVI, 3*, &c *Our Lady*,—Virgin Mary

**Page 20.** *Glimpse*,—faint view *Outstretchèr*,—

Cape Bojador *Which was a land mark*,—which, although at first pronounced as altogether unapproachable, was now to be used as a mark on land for the guidance of sea-men. *Silently steal*,—sail smoothly and silently

**Stormy times**,—times of trouble and serious disturbance In order to understand the nature of disturbances consequent upon the change of government of Portugal, the following genealogical table should be studied carefully —





King Duarte, the then eldest son and successor of king John I, appointed, on his death in 1438, his brothers Pedro and Henry (the Navigator), the joint guardians to his son, the Infant Affonso. In a public assembly, Pedro, in order to remove all doubts as to the succession, declared that Affonso's brother, Fernando should be sworn hereditary prince of the kingdom, until the king should have a son. On king Affonso's attaining majority the regent resigned to him the sceptre at a convocation held at Lisbon. The king was at first dutiful to his uncle and requested him to continue to act as Regent but the enemies of the Regent so prejudiced the young king against his uncle, that he soon demanded of him the surrender of the Regency at once. His marriage with Dom Pedro's daughter was, however, celebrated. The young and thoughtless king was now a puppet in the hands of his courtiers, who tried all possible means to damage the influence of the uncle. The king accordingly declared war against his uncle, heaped all manner insults and indignities upon him, and a series of bitterest persecutions followed. In a conflict, which took place, in 1449, Dom Pedro was slain, his head having been cut off by a common soldier. So much was the undutifulness of the king, that he suffered the mutilated trunk of his uncle to lie exposed and unburied for three days. Portugal was now a scene of utmost disorders and barbarity. All Europe condemned the conduct of the king to his uncle, who was honoured by the whole nation, for his integrity, patronage to men of letters, and for the loftiness of his character in general.

**The troubles of the regency, &c**—On his being appointed joint-regent by his brother, Dom Duarte, the late king, in 1438, Prince Henry devoted all his attention to the matters of the state, and lost sight of every thing else in his efforts to remedy the dangers and troubles in which the country had become involved.

**Sea-wolf**,—A fish, also called wolf-fish, so named from its fierceness and ravenousness. It grows sometimes to the length of four and seven feet and feeds on common fish and other aquatic animals. **Azenegh Moors**,—or the Azanegues, who are a dark brown people inhabiting the coast beyond Cape Branco.

**Page 21** *Falling in with*,—meeting by chance.

*Plenary indulgences*,—entire remission of the punishment due to sins, granted by the Pope or Church, and supposed to save the sinner from purgatory. *The terms of the grant should be modified*,—see *Text*, P 124, Para 13 *Apostolic grace*,—favour of the Apostle (i.e. the Pope), so called, because the Pope of Rome is said to be the successor of St Peter, one of the twelve Apostles of Christ. *With the breath of royal favour*,—with the favour of the king or of the Regent (in this particular case)—cf “The Regent Dom Pedro also granted to his brother Prince Henry a charter, authorizing him to receive the fifth of the produce of the expeditions appertaining to the king, and in consideration of the great labour and expense which the Prince undertook at his own sole cost, issued a mandate that none should go on these expeditions without Prince Henry’s special command and license”—*Major Outlay*,—investment of money

**Page 22.** *Europe may be said to widen*,—The Europeans may be said to have definitely commenced the slave-trade which was, from this time, to spread on all the quarters of the globe, like the circular waves on agitated water formed by some heavy substance thrown into it, and which was not destined to abate in its fury in course of time, as the circular waves on agitated water are apt to do as the space occupied by them becomes wider and wider. *New phase*,—novel feature. “*The fruit of the spear*,”—one taken as spoil in war. *Accident*,—matter of chance, chance acquisition. *Gave rise to*,—produced

**Page 23.** *Uninviting*,—uninteresting *Appearance* *Stand out in hard relief, dry and unattractive*,—Are recorded in a dry and uninteresting form, so that they appear all the more conspicuous and unembellished. *Relief*,—(In sculpture, &c.)—The projection or prominence of a figure above or beyond the ground on which it stands. *Animating*,—lively. *As we have it now*,—as is handed down to us in a recorded form. *Bare statistics*,—simple facts and figures [*Foot-note.* *Thirst*,—anxious desire. *Dangers poetry of life*,—dangers enhance the charm of life. It is dangers that make our otherwise dull and mono

tonous life enjoyable, by making it a "chequered scene of weal and woe"]

**Page 24.** *The conjoint enterprise*,—the adventure as whole undertaken by the entire crew *Had in it a life worked out*,—contained in it a romantic mode of life worth living, and a bold and attractive sort of existence fit to be pursued and enjoyed to the end *Its purpose*,—the original purpose of the enterprise *Some purpose*,—some other practical good, if not the self-same one which it was originally intended for *Radiant with success*,—beaming with the rays of joy, as it were, caused by success, exceedingly gladdened **And then hope negative of some fear**,—hope, which was so long directed to some *positive* gain or renown, was now thought to consist in the mere *absence* of some particular fear The original stay of hope being removed, it was now made to cling to the mere sense of self-preservation *Recrimination*,—counter-accusation

**Page 25.** *Kindly*,—charitably, without blaming others *Teeming with*,—full of *Makes but a poor show*,—presents only a meagre appearance *Galley*,—a low, flat-built vessel, with one deck, and navigated only with sails and oars *Consul*,—a representative or agent of a government in the court of a foreign king, commissioned to protect its political or commercial interests

**Page 26.** *Dragon's blood*,—The vague popular name of the thickened juice of various plants, of a red colour, used for tinging spirit and turpentine varnishes, for tooth tinctures, and powders, for staining marble, &c *In fine*,—in short *Caravel*,—a light round, old-fashioned ship

**Page 27.** *Middle men*,—agents between two parties *Licensed*,—who had taken license or special permission from the Government to deal in slaves

**Page 28.** *The infante*,—"all the sons of the sovereigns of Spain and Portugal bear this title, except the crown prince, who is called in Spain the Prince of Asturias " (*Dr Brewer*,)—hence, Prince Henry *Suffer*,—allows *Brought over*,—converted *Romish faith*,—Christianity of the Roman Catholic Church *But by hear-say*,—

except by current rumours. *In short, again of marauding,*—Briefly speaking, those people who were anxiously desirous of making profits, and when they found that they were actually doing so in this business, hit upon, as usual, an easy mode of following their trade smoothly, which did not entail them much trouble, either in the form of discovery or of plundering *Spare*,—thin *And*,—sterile *Corpulent*,—fat. *Well-made*,—stoutly built.

**Page. 29.** *Full of words*,—talkative. *Never had done talking*,—never finish talking *Potentate*,—chief

**The religion Mahammadan**—The following extract will explain the grounds of this supposition —“ Budomel was so gracious to Cada Mosto that he allowed him to enter his mosque at the hour of prayer The Azanegues and Arabs, who were his priests, were summoned to stand, and Budomel performed his orisons in the following manner Standing up, he raised his eyes towards heaven, then walked forward two steps, uttered a few words in low tone, and prostrated himself on the ground, which he kissed respectfully. In all this, he was followed by the Azanegues and the rest of his retinue He continued in prayer about half an hour, repeating the same ceremonies, ten or twelve times ” *Major*

*Doctors*,—learned men, (here specially in religious matters )

**Page 30. Paradise in this world.**—(*Paradise*, primarily, in Persian, means a pleasure-garden, with parks and other appendages), a place of supreme felicity or delight, the garden of Eden, in which Adam and Eve were placed immediately after their creation *Signal*,—marked or distinguished *Maintained*, kept up *Considering that opponents*,—taking the fact into consideration, that all the more credit is due to the natives who, in spite of the absence of weapons of a superior order as used by the Europeans, kept up a brisk fight against them, with matchless prowess **The Constellation of the southern cross**,—The most conspicuous constellation in the southern hemisphere, situated near the Antarctic Circle, and therefore never visible to the northern latitudes It consists of four bright stars to which the fancy, aided by Christian

associations, readily gives the cruciform shape. The two brilliant stars which mark the summit and foot of the cross, have nearly the same right ascension. The constellation is therefore almost perpendicular when passing the meridian, and the two stars act as pointers to the Antarctic pole. The constellation contains seven stars to which the voyagers from India, Australia and other eastern countries attach sacred interest. *Would have nothing them,—* would have no connection with them.

Page 31.—Sometime between 1460 went out.—“The date of the voyage is not given, but it was either in 1461 or 1462, since it occurred between the death of Prince Henry at the close of 1460, and Cuda Mosto's departure from the Peninsula at the beginning of 1463.”—Major Helps in his *‘Spanish conquest in America’*, writes—“The historian Barros says that the African coast from Cape Bojador to Sierra Leone was discovered in Prince Henry's time, in which case it seems probable that this voyage of Piedro de Ointra's was before the Prince's death, but Cuda Mosto, (whose authority is I think, of more weight) places it later.”

Page 32.—*The precise date said,—*read the above extracts. The death of Prince Henry in 1463.—In assigning this date to Prince Henry's death, Helps has followed, both in this work and in the main work,—(*Spanish Conquest in America*) the historian, Faria y Sousa, who says —“He died at Sagres, in the year one thousand, four hundred and sixty-three in the sixty-seventh year of his age.” But this seems to be inaccurate. The date must be 1460 instead of 1463. The following extract from an account of the Prince's death given by Diego Gomez, a loyal servant and navigator of the Prince, who was about his master's person at the time of his death, will falsify the given date —“In the year of our Lord 1460 Prince Henry fell ill in his town on Cape St Vincent, and of that sickness he died on *Thursday, the 13th November of the same year*. And the same night on which he died, they carried him to the Church of St Mary in Lagos, where he was buried with all honour.” His body was afterwards removed to the monastery of Batalha. The following extract from the English version of a Latin inscription on the monument erected to the Prince's memory in 1839 will also support the above view. “This great Prince died on *the 13th November, 1460*. Three-hundred and seventy-nine years after his death, Maria II, Queen of Portugal, and the Algarves, commanded that

this monument should be erected to the memory of the illustrious prince her kinsman. (1530) "

*Parting with him*,—bidding him farewell *Unity*,—singleness *Versed*,—proficient. *Letters*,—literature *Skilful fencer*,—skilful manipulator of a sword or foil in attack or defence *No bad habit was known of him*,—a sentence has been omitted after this, which would best explain the meaning—"He did not marry, nor was it known that he ever violated the purity of continence" *Equal to the authority he bore*,—as great as the commanding nature he possessed. *Niceties*,—minute parts *Which gave life picture*,—which make the representation of the Prince appear vivid, faithful and real

**Page 33.**—*Of great counsel did not perceive*,—this portion should have been printed within inverted commas, as it is exactly quoted from Azurara *Counsel*,—deliberation, or sound judgment *Prevalence*,—predominance *Phlegmatic*,—abounding in phlegm, cold animal fluid, (one of the four humours of which the ancients supposed the human constitution to be composed, the other humours being, *Choler*, *blood*, and *black bile* As any of these predominates it determines the temper of the mind and body, hence the expressions *sanguine*, *choleric*, *phlegmatic*, and *melancholic* humours. *Phlegmatic temperament*,—disposition as affected by a preponderance of *phlegm* over the other humours, hence, sluggish, cold, dull, not easily excited into action or passion *Deliberation*,—thoughtful consideration, reflection **It was this temperament an actual fault in him**,—Because he was of a temperament not easily to be excited into passion, he was incapable of entertaining any feeling of malice or grudge against any man, although the man might have done him the greatest harm possible, so that this very mildness of disposition, which is essentially a great human virtue, seemed, in his case, to be a positive defect in his character. **He was accordingly justice.**—By reason of this very mildness of disposition, which seemed to have brought about a corresponding dullness in all his doings, he was considered by some as wanting in the power of administering "even-handed" justice amongst his servants

and subordinates according to the merits and demerits of their individual conduct. The phrase comes from Azurara's writings—"There was no hatred known in him, nor ill-will against any person, however great the injury he had received from him, and such was his benignity in this respect, that judicious men remarked against him, that *he was deficient in distributive justice, (justicia distributiva)*, for in all other respects, he conducted himself justly" *Bear out*,—corroborate, testify to the truth of *Desertion of his banner*,—act of wilfully leaving the scene of action of which he was the commander

**And one especially desertion of his banner wanting in courage**,—The reference is to the disastrous expedition against the Moorish city of Tangier for the capture of which Prince Henry and his brothers made several desperate but fruitless attempts for several days successively till the 13th September 1487. On the 9th, Prince Henry had to fight desperately with the Moors who appeared in great multitudes. The Portuguese batteries, the artillery and munitions for the siege were taken possession of by the Moors. Prince Henry had his horse killed under him and found himself fighting on foot in the midst of the enemy. After much difficulty he mounted another horse and reached the camp whither he was followed by his Portuguese soldiers who were overwhelmed with the great odds against which they had to contend, and to add to his dismay, he found that about a thousand of his men had fled to the ships. Happily Dom Pedro de Castro, who was in command of the fleet, came to his rescue with reinforcements. Oppressed as he was with toil and anxiety the Prince showed no sign of shrinking from the high requirements of his responsible position. Though surrounded by danger the most imminent he encouraged his men by an appearance of confidence and cheerfulness, which he was far from feeling in his heart.

*It was an heroic one*,—although an error, it proceeded from the nobleness of his character. To be able to forgive even at the risk of the greatest personal peril, is certainly a noble or truly heroic trait in a man's character. "Even his failings leaned to virtue's side" Cf. the proverb,—*"To err is human, to forgive divine"* **Such as belonged to the first Caesar**,—De Quincey says of Caesar's character—"Certainly the whole tenour of his life was not courteous only, but kind, and to his enemies, merciful in a degree which implied so much more magnanimity than men in general could understand,—that by many it

was put down to the account of weakness." And in the estimation . . . commander,—such acts of noble forgiveness, proceeding, as they did, from his error of judgment, served, no doubt, to increase the attachment of his followers for himself, although they might have lowered him in the estimation of his men as their leader, especially with regard to his capacity for administering due justice to them according to their individual merits and demerits.

**PRO 34** *The same authority,—viz Azurara* Throughout the whole arc of night,—during the whole of the night. "Arc" means, any part of the circumference of a circle. "Arc of night" means that curve about half the circumference of the earth, which revolves round its axis during the night. Upon whose shoulders, meritorious discovery,—the idea of placing a mighty weight upon the shoulders of a man is taken from the story of Atlas, who was the brother of Prometheus, and made war, with the other Titans, upon Zeus, the king of heaven, and being defeated, was condemned to bear heaven on his shoulders and hands. (Cf. :—

" . . . Since he stood  
With Atlas on shoulders fit to bear  
The weight of night's immortals"

*Milton, P. L. II.* Would that discover,—it would be highly desirable it were like Prince Henry having the bold and far-reaching sagacity of discovering lands, lived in later times to govern them, (and check all those barbarities and oppressions which prevailed in the newly discovered lands under the later Portuguese rulers) *Take to themselves*,—adopt as their own *Talant de bien faire*,—endeavour to do good. *Many a land that, as yet, . . . of an older world*,—the purport is this. Although this excellent motto of Prince Henry's was inscribed in many lands, newly discovered under his patronage, yet, it has not, as yet produced the least degree of good influence upon the long existing civilization of the old world. About the downfall of the Portuguese an historian writes the following :—

"So sudden as the course of prosperity had been, its decline was almost more abrupt, and may, in a great measure, be referred to the influence of the pulchre, for the introduction, into Portugal, of the



Inquisition in 1536, which led to the expulsion of the numerous Jews, on whose able financial management the commercial interests of the Portuguese were largely dependent and gave rise to an amount of social tyranny and oppression, both in the colonies and at home, which coupled with a bad system of government depressed the energy and crippled the resources of the nation. The influence of the Jesuits and their evil counsels in urging the young king Sebastian, to enter upon a fatal expedition to Africa against the Infidels, led to still further miseries."

**Page 35 To whom unfairly given**—In this remarkable voyage (of 1484) Diego Cam was accompanied by Martin Behaim, the inventor of the application of the astrolabe to navigation, and to whom has been erroneously attributed the first idea of the discovery of America, but Behaim himself never wished to dispraise the glory of Columbus, although others have attempted to do so for him. The most prominent material that has been employed for detraction from the fame of Columbus in favour of Martin Behaim was the famous globe made by the latter in 1492, and still existing in the possession of his descendants in their ancient mansion in Nuremberg. All sorts of claims have been set up by the Nurembergers on behalf of their distinguished countryman on the asserted evidence of this globe. Hartman Schedel in the famous Nuremberg Chronicle, published in 1493, had happened to speak of Behaim and Cam having crossed the equator and reached the other hemisphere, and this suggestive declaration seems to have supplied the Nurembergers with the idea that long before Columbus or Magellan sailed in those seas, Behaim had discovered not only America, but the straits of Magellan. The best refutation of these assertions is Behaim's globe itself. Even letters of Behaim himself, found in the archives of Nuremberg have been referred to in ratification of the same claims, but their futility is proved by the date of the letters themselves (1486) plainly pointing to the voyage with Diego Cam, the limits of which are clearly defined, and from which Behaim returned in April or May of that year.

*By the way*,—By the bye, in passing. **And the search chemistry**,—The search of the navigators after the legendary Christian King Priester John bore the same relation to the matter of maritime discovery, as the experiments and

investigations of the old chemists for finding out the imaginary substance called *Philosopher's stone* wherewith to transmute all baser metals into gold, did to the region of chemistry, i. e., the search after two unknown and imaginary objects, viz., the particulars about Prester John by the navigators, and those about the *Philosopher's stone* by the alchemists, produced important practical results in two distinct departments, viz.—geographical discoveries in the one, and chemical inventions in the other **Philosopher's stone**.—The ancient alchemists thought that there was a substance which would convert all baser metals into gold. This substance they called the *philosopher's stone*. The following are the inventions made in searching for the *Philosopher's stone*—(1) It was in searching for this treasure that Botticher stumbled on the invention of Dresden porcelain manufacture (2) Roger Bacon on the composition of gun-powder (3) Geber on the properties of acids (4) Van Helmont on the nature of gas (5) Dr Glauber on the "salts" which bear his name **Alchemist**.—One who practises Alchemy, a pretended science aiming at the transmutation of metals into gold, the finding a universal solvent, &c

**Page 36.** *From experience*,—viz they met with a terrible storm here *An omen of better things*,—a harbinger of more important benefits, viz—the discovery of the maritime route to India, and the consequent advantages to trade. *Singular link*,—a strange connection *One of the works of Cardinal Aliaco*,—perhaps the *Cosmographia*, see notes on P 57 *In quibus omnibus interfui*,—I was engaged in all I have been among *Fiction*,—fictitious writings, or writings of imagination

**Page 37.** *Majesty*,—grandeur. *Tiresome allusions to the classics*,—copious and so tedious references to the writings of the ancient Greek and Roman authors *Faded air*,—appearance of vagueness.

**The Lusíadas**.—A famous epic poem by the Portuguese poet Camoens, which celebrates the adventures of the Lusians or the Portuguese under Vasco da Gama in their discovery of India. The fleet first sailed to Mozambique in Africa, but Bacchus, the guardian power of the Mohomedans, raised a commotion against the

Lusians, and a battle ensued, in which the Lusians were victorious. The fleet was next conducted by treachery to Quilon, a harbour on the east coast of the same continent, but Venus or Divine Love, to save her favourites from danger, drove them away by a tempest and Hermes bade Gama steer for Melinda in Africa. At Melinda the Lusians were hospitably received, and the king of the country not only vowed eternal friendship, but also provided a pilot to conduct the fleet to India. In the Indian Ocean Bacchus tried to destroy the fleet, but the "Silver star of Divine Love" calmed the sea, and Gama arrived in India in safety.

*Deep-set caverned eyes,*—Eyes sunk deep into the sockets. **That statue of Apollo, the colossal wonder of the world,**—That Statue of Apollo, the gigantic colossus of Rhodes, which was reckoned as one of the seven wonders of the world. It was the joint-work of Chares of Lindus and Laches. They formed it of metal which was cast in separate pieces, a process which lasted for 12 years, and was completed in 280 B C. Its height is doubtful,—some making it 90 feet, others 90 and even 105 cubits. It was of so stupendous a size that ships passed between its legs. It cost 300 talents, and sixty years after its erection it was thrown down by an earthquake. *In solemn language*      *disastrous prophecies discovered him*—Read the following poetical version—

"With every bounding keel that dares my rage,  
Eternal war my rocks and storm shall wage,  
The next proud fleet that through my drear domain  
With daring search shall hoist the steering vane,  
That gallant navy, by my whirlwinds tost  
And raging seas, shall perish on my coast  
Then he who first my secret reign deserved,  
A naked corse wide floating o'er the tide  
Shall drive,—unless my heart's full raptures fail,  
O Lusian! oft shalt thou thy children wail,  
Each year thy ship-wreck'd sons deplore,  
Each year thy sheeted masts shall strew thy shore."

*Maledictions attempted by their fellow-men,*—Such imprecations may be poured forth, without any fear of retaliation, against those who are bold enough to perform something new by deviating from the beaten track, and

are so prepared for patiently encountering the stoutest opposition from their fellow-men

**Page 38.** *Touching*,—affecting *The stupendous body*,—the gigantic form, “the horrid form” *Titans*,—they were the sons of *Cœlus* and *Terra* (heaven and earth). They were all of a gigantic stature and proportionable strength They waged wars against the gods, which are very celebrated in mythology *Crazed*,—maddened *Members*,—limbs *Sonorous*,—long-drawn *Descenze a nurembergia*,—dispersed itself into a new black (cloud) *The sacred chorus of angels*,—the sacred body of guardian angels appointed by God to watch over the destinies of nations and individuals

**Page 39.** *The Genius of the stormy cape* *unfortunate land*,—The spirit of the stormy cape might have made truer prophesies if it had uttered its imprecations on the unfortunate inhabitants of the newly discovered land, instead of on its discoverers *Prominence*,—height *Curving round*,—doubling

**Page 40** *Coincident*,—agreement *Inert*,—inactive. *Made friends with*,—formed alliance with *Keeping aloof from*,—avoiding *Expounded*, explained

**Page 41** *Held good*,—was applicable, would hold water *God-father*,—one who, at a child's baptism, engages to be its father in relation to God or in its religious training “*Bemoan, because he was a man, &c., accompanied him*”—(in P 42)—The whole extract comes from *Barros Presence*,—personal appearance *Oration*,—speech

**Page 42** *To his satisfaction*,—‘To’ signifies result. *Intercede in his favour*,—plead on his behalf *Acquitted himself well*,—behaved well, bore a creditable conduct

**Page 43** *Singular feats on horseback*—Remarkable exploits of horsemanship *Besides his restitution*,—in addition to reinstating him in his former position

**Page 44** *Thrown into shade*,—eclipsed, made to appear insignificant *Less*,—less important *Swerve*,—deviate *Unshaken by popular clamour*,—Unmoved by the loud and captious criticism and disapprobation of the peo-

ple. (For a specimen, see P 16, Text) *Who passed laborious one purpose*,—spent days and nights in hard labour, applying himself constantly and steadily to the realisation of this sole end of his life *Shortcomings*,—failings, defects *Springs*,—arises, proceeds *Contumely*,—contempt, or indignity

**Page 45** *The other great discoverer*,—Columbus *Worked out*,—accomplished *Sore travail*,—Hard labour mixed with pain *Trauil*,—(Lit) the pangs of child-birth *The vicissitudes of courts*,—changes of fortune as ordinarily experienced at courts *The father*,—the originator *Eulogium*,—praise *The contemporary Portuguese monarchs*,—viz—John I, his father, Duarte (his elder brother), Dom Pedro, the Regent, (though not a monarch) and Affonso V (his nephew) *Be but just*,—be doing bare justice *This raising* . *unknown*,—this revelation of the mysteries of the unexplored regions (The metaphor comes from the raising of curtain of a theatre) *Glimpse*,—indistinct view from some distance

**Page 46** *Set the fashion of discovery*,—introduced the practice of undertaking voyages of discovery, which soon became widely prevalent *Men's minds were channel*,—men's thoughts were made to be devoted to this branch of investigation in particular (*Minds* are here compared to currents of water diverted to a different channel) *Sound*,—reasonable *Conflicting*,—contradictory **Which have made through successive ages**—Which have made his name one of those monumental land-marks in the history of the gradual development of human knowledge that have throughout been guiding and instructing men of later generations by dispelling the darkness of their ignorance and unfolding to them the rich store of enlightenment they embody in themselves, just as beacon-fires placed on conspicuous heights diffuse their streaming light far and wide and thus help the mariners to steer the course of their vessels at night in the right direction by enabling them to avoid dangerous rocks and shoals in the sea *Beacon-fires*,—light to direct seamen to give them notice of danger

## CHAPTER II.

**Page 47.** *Hotly contested*,—violently disputed.

**As that of Homer's**,—regarding the birth-place, station in life and actual existence of Homer, the celebrated Greek poet, the most diverse opinions are held by the learned of modern times According to the generally accepted tradition, Homer was born in Smyrna After his death, seven different cities claimed the honour of being the birth-place of Homer So runs the couplet:—

“Seven rival cities contend for Homer dead  
Through which the living Homer begged his bread”

**A succession of pamphleteers . . . great navigator**,—

Although Genoa is acknowledged to be the birth-place of Columbus yet some other Italian villages claimed the honour, the following are the names of the places that set up such claims —(1) *Pradello* in Placentia—The claims of Placentia had been first advanced in 1662, by Pietro Maria Campi in the ecclesiastical history of that place, who maintained that Columbus was a native of Pradello in that vicinity (2) *Piedmont*,—It was shown that a Domenico Columbus was lord of the castle of Cuccaro in Monteferrat, at the time of the birth of Christopher Columbus, who, it was asserted, was his son and born in his castle It was, however, proved that Domenico Columbus, father of the admiral, was resident in Genoa, both before, and many years after, the death of this lord of Cuccaro, who happened to bear the same name (3) *Savona*—A city in the Genoese territory Signor Giovanni Battista Belloro, an advocate of Savona, maintained this claim in a disputation, May 12, 1826 (4) *Cogoleto*,—One or both of the two admirals, with whom he sailed, are stated to have come from that place, and to have been confounded with him so as to have given support to this idea (Bossi, Paris, 1824) (5) *Terra Rossa*—A village between Quinto and Nervi, where his family possessed a small property, which has induced some writers to assign his birth to one of these places Bossi says that there is still a tower here which bears the title of *Torre dei Colombi* (6) *Bogliasco*.

**At a comparatively recent that city**.—In 1826 some important documents relative to Columbus were discovered in a Jesuit College in the city of Madrid. Washington Irving himself proceeded to Madrid in that year in order to examine these documents The question of his birthplace has been conclusively decided by the highest authority,—the evidence of Columbus himself In a testament

executed in 1498 which has been admitted in evidence before the Spanish tribunals in certain law-suits among his descendants, he twice declares that he was a native of the city of Genoa. An informal codicil, executed by Columbus at Valladolid, May 4, 1506, sixteen days before his death, was discovered about 1785 in the Corsini Library at Rome—It was written on the blank page of a little breviary presented to Columbus by Pope Alexander VII. Columbus leaves the book "to his beloved country, the Republic of Genoa."

*Statements in his own writing*,—see Text, P. 240 "Thine age shall be no impediment &c." *Those of his contemporaries*,—e.g., Bernaldez, the curate of Los Palacios (Text, P. 48) *Range over*,—cover the period of, vary between

Page 48 Mr Irving adopts Bernaldez more or less,—The following are the arguments of Irving as adapted from his writings:—"In the valuable manuscript chronicle of the reign of the Catholic Sovereigns, written by Andres Bernaldez the curate of Los Palacios, there is a long tract on the subject of the discoveries of Columbus it concludes with these words—He died at Valladolid in the year 1506, in the month of May, in a good old age, being seventy years old, a little more or less. The curate of Los Palacios was a contemporary and intimate friend of Columbus, who was occasionally a guest in his house, no one was more competent to form a correct idea of his age." Irving sums up the grounds upon which his theory is based—(1) The increasing infirmities, with which he struggled during his voyage and which at last rendered him a cripple and confined to his bed. (2) The allusion to his advanced age in one of his letters to the sovereigns, wherein he relates the consolation he had received from a secret voice.—"Thy old age shall be no impediment to any great undertaking, &c. (See Text, P. 240) (3) The permission granted him by the King the year previous to his death to travel on a mule, instead of a horse, on account of his age and infirmities. (4) The assertion of Oviedo that at the time of his death, he was quite old. But this statement has

an air of vagueness,—so says Prescott, in his "*History of Ferdinand and Isabella*"—"There are no sufficient data for determining the period of Columbus's birth. The learned Munoz places it in 1446. Navarrette, who has weighed the various authorities with caution, seems inclined to remove it back eight or ten years further, resting chiefly on a remark of Bernaldez, that he died in 1506,—in a good old age, at the age of seventy, a little more or less." *The expression is somewhat vague*—In order to reconcile the facts with this hypothesis, Navarrette is compelled to reject, as a chirographical blunder, a passage in a letter of the admiral, placing his birth in 1456, and to distort another in his book of "Prophecies," which, if literally taken,

would seem to establish his birth near the time assigned by Munoz. Incidental allusions, in some other authorities, speaking of Columbus's old age at or near the time of his death, strongly corroborate Navarrete's inference. Mr Irving seems willing to rely exclusively on the authority of Bernaldez."

*Ancient authorities*,—such as Munoz, author of "*The History of the New World*" *Wool-carder*,—One who combs wool. *But this fact humble origin*,—because in large cities, even respectable men take to humble professions, without incurring any popular odium **At any rate**

**man's ancestors**,—In the event of the birth of a great man in a particular family, some other persons belonging to it are also named, along with the great man himself, as his worthy ancestors, who notwithstanding their name in their own sphere would surely have remained unnoticed by the world, had it not been for their relationship with the great man born in their family.

**Page 49. A French squadron. John of Anjou . . . .**  
**Neapolitan crown.**—Naples was the continental division of the kingdom of the two Sicilies. It was a part of the Roman territory at a very early period. After various political revolutions, the crown of Naples was obtained by Charles Anjou, brother of St Louis, king of France in 1266, but the French being hated by the Sicilians, the Anjou dynasty was followed by that of Aragon, which ruled the kingdom from the time of the Sicilian Vespers (1282). In 1459, Genoa having been threatened with an invasion by Alphonso V of Aragon, king of Naples, it asked the assistance of the king of France, who accordingly sent John of Anjou, Duke of Calabria son of Rene or Renato, Count of Provence and the former king of Naples, to its assistance. In the meantime Alphonso having died, the Genoese were free from all dangers. John of Anjou, however, in the hope of recovering the kingdom of Naples for his father, fitted out a naval expedition to make a descent upon that city. The Republic of Genoa aided him with ships and money. The struggle of John of Anjou for the crown of Naples lasted about four years with varied fortune, but was finally unsuccessful. **Two naval commanders bearing his name, &c.**—A distant relative of Christopher, named Colombo, a hardy veteran of the seas, who had risen to some distinction, by his bravery, took part in the naval expedition of John of Anjou against Naples. A nephew of this old Genoese Admiral, called Colombo the younger, also took part in these transactions. Fernando Columbus describes this Colombo the younger as a famous corsair, so terrible for his deeds against the Infidels that the Moorish mothers used to frighten their unruly children with his name.



*The University of Pavia*,—The famous university in the city of Pavia was founded by Charlemagne. It is particularly noted as a school of medicine. *Natural science*,—Physical science *Stood him in good stead*,—was highly serviceable to him. *Field of enterprise*,—place affording opportunities of undertaking bold attempts. *Harvests of rich wares*,—abundant supply of rich merchandise and the treasure of the bosom of the deep. *Spoils*,—booty.

**Page 50** *Explorations*,—discoveries (under Prince Henry) *Maritime*, relating to the sea. *Drudgery of his father's trade*,—tedious and irksome duties of his father's profession (*viz*, that of a wool-carder) *Drudgery*,—(Lit) The hard labour of a slave. *Friesland*,—or *Vriesland*, (ancient Frisia) is a province in the north of Holland. [*Foot-note.* **The Ultima Thule**,—(Lit) The remotest land. The end of the world. Pliny, Solinus and Mela take it for Iceland. Others consider it to be Shetland, Thule was the most northern point known to the ancient Romans.]

**Page 51.** The discoveries by the Northmen in North America,—Previously to the time of Columbus, the Europeans had visited America. The Scandinavians (or the Northmen) after having colonised Iceland, in 875 A. D., and Greenland in 983 A. D., had, by the year 1000 A. D., discovered America as far down as 41°—31' N. Lat., a point near to New Bedford in the State of Massachusetts. These Scandinavians afterwards settled in the neighbourhood,—the mother country maintaining an intercourse with the colony down to the 14th century, most probably through the intervention of Iceland and Greenland. But these enterprises do not appear to have left any special impress on the character or prospects of the new continent, being more akin, perhaps, to similar incidents of yet earlier ages, than to the long meditated and well-matured scheme of the illustrious Genoese.

*El Mina*,—a settlement first established by the Portuguese in 1481, and was the first European settlement planted on the coast of Guinea. It now belongs to the Dutch. *He mentions particularly*—*viz*, in a letter written by Columbus many years afterwards. (The account of the exploit as given in the text, is based upon this letter) *Galliot*,—a small galley built for chase. It is moved both by sails and oars,

having one mast, and sixteen or twenty seats for rowers  
*Conveyed*,—escorted ; attended for protection *Hazard an  
 engagement*,—run the risk of a fight .

**Page 52** *Faint of acquiescence*,—show of consent  
*They were in full sail for*,—Were making all possible haste  
 in proceeding towards *Real*,—life-like *Picture him*,—  
 form an image or picture of him *Mind's eye*,—Imagination  
*Habit*,—dress *The old historians*,—e g His son Fernando,  
 Las Casas, and others *Well-authenticated portrait*,—pic-  
 ture or likeness which can safely be relied upon as true  
*A good authority*,—Fernando being Columbus's son *Any  
 of those little literary photograph*,—Any of those de-  
 licate strokes of art or suggestions which essentially consti-  
 tute an accurate biographical sketch of a person, as faith-  
 ful as his photographic likeness *Commanding presence*,—  
 dignified demeanour *Aquiline nose*,—Well-formed nose point-  
 ed at the end, like the crooked beak of an eagle *Aquiline*,  
 —adjective from eagle (L *aquila* = eagle) *Full of expres-  
 sion*,—so bright as to be expressive of a superior intelli-  
 gence, being as it were, a mirror reflecting a noble soul  
 within *"Grey" eyes* indicate determination *Already stated*,  
 —see Text, P 48, foot-note

**Page 53** *Great spirits*,—high-souled persons **Lower  
 down, too, . for it to discover**,—Even amongst  
 those that are known as less original in their talents than  
 the first-class inventors and discoverers like Columbus and  
 others, there are many that are endowed with the self-same  
 sterling qualities which prompt them to perform deeds  
 praiseworthy in their own way, but which do not obtain  
 full play and lie dormant for want of suitable opportunities  
 and which, if given sufficient scope to, might have made  
 the position of their possessors equal to that of a man like  
 Columbus who, in his own time, was fortunate enough to  
 display his genius by discovering the new world. *Cf.  
 Gray*.—

" Full many a gem of purest ray serene  
 The dark unfathomed caves of ocean bear ,  
 Full many a flower is born to blush unseen,  
 And waste its sweetness in the desert air

*Elegy written in a country churchyard.*

**The truly great are apt ... can compass,—**  
 Those who are really great are naturally disposed to appreciate and believe in the greatness of others, and consequently to be devoutly faithful in all their dealings with men in general in this world, while as regards their attitude towards the, spiritual world, they possess, in a considerable degree, a reverential nature, because of their more habitually being impressed with a spontaneous consciousness, than ordinary men, of the divine presence which is far beyond the reach of the comprehension of the latter even with the highest stretch of their imagination *Irving* writes —“Nor did his piety consist in mere forms, but partook of that lofty and solemn enthusiasm with which his whole life was strongly tinged” *Sensitive*,—susceptible of being affected by feelings *Impassioned*,—ardent, zealous *Humane*,—kind, gracious *Self-denying*,—self-sacrificing *Courteous*, polite.

**Page 54. Of that largely enquiring kind,—**Marked by that spirit of inquisitiveness or insatiable thirst after knowledge *Enduring*,—Capable of bearing hardships *Constancy of mind in adversity*,—Steadfastness of purpose even in misfortune. *Rapt in his designs*,—Completely absorbed in thinking over the schemes of his discovery **Having a ringing might have heeded,**—Having his mind always haunted, as it were, by the thoughts of his lofty scheme, which made him altogether disregard many other questions of personal interest that, from a prudential point of view, ought to have been taken into consideration by him *One to be loved by. favour and respect*,—Such was the magnetic influence of his presence that those who came into contact with him could not but love him, respect him, or gladly accord him patronage *The continuous current*,—The never-ending series, *As we have seen,—viz in pp 49-50* *Detracting from his merits*,—taking away from his credit of originality **In real life people do not spring from from nothing to something**—It is altogether impossible for a man in this world, who leads a life of stern realities, to

start from something unreal and fanciful, and yet to arrive at something real, solid and tangible, as persons suffering from a delirious kind of fever generally do, whose minds are distracted for the time being with a series of the wildest sort of dreams. A great invention or discovery may, in most cases, be compared to a bold and big jump, taken from one land to another, and not from an unreality to something actual. The simile may be expanded thus:—Just as a person, while taking a jump, starts from one firm land to another, and not from the air to earth, so a great inventor or discoverer sets out from one series of real and sound data, and arrives at a conclusion which is quite new and startling, and may therefore, with much propriety, claim the credit of originality. *Consideration,—*point of view

**Page 55.** *At the outset,—at the beginning* *The wish to know the secrets of this world,*—See Text, P 51. **It may be a question whether...** **drift-wood seen on the seas**—It is an unsolved problem whether this his earnest desire for learning the secrets of nature impelled him so far as to present, all at once, to his mind's eye, a vision of the far-off land across the Atlantic and of the possibility of discovering it, and then to make him set to the study of the works of the acknowledged authorities on the subject in order to bear out the conclusion of his pre-conceived notion, or whether the impulse carried him onwards, along with the gradual development of the idea of the possibility of discovering land across the ocean, which it was his aim to establish, into profound thinking upon geographical studies, upon the explorations of the Portuguese navigators, the speculations of learned men, researches of the preceding geographers and upon the vague and unintelligible mention of large and undiscovered continents made by some writers, solely from their intuitive perception, and upon unfounded accounts of sea-men about wood drifted about on water. **A way by the west to the Indies,**—Columbus imagined that there was a way by the west (*viz.* by the sea) to India and other adjoining countries of Asia,—like the way by the

east (viz, by land) which was known to the preceding travellers and was traced to its farthest limit, especially by Marco Polo, the great Venetian traveller **Cipango—or Chipangu.**—An island situated to the east of China, corresponding to the modern Japan Marco Polo says about it —

Chipangu is an Island towards the east in the high seas, 1500 (?) miles distant from the Continent, and a very great Island it is. The people are white, civilized, and well-favoured. They are idolators, and are dependent on no body. And I can tell you the quantity of gold they have is endless. I will tell you a wonderful thing about the Palace of the Lord of that Island. You must know that he hath a great palace which is entirely roofed with fine gold, just as our churches are roofed with lead, in so much that it would be scarcely possible to estimate its value. Moreover, all the pavement of the Palace, and the floors of its chambers are entirely of gold, in plates like slabs of stone, a good two fingers thick, and the windows are also of gold, so that altogether the richness of this palace is past all bounds and all belief. They have also pearls in abundance, which are of a rose colour, but fine, big and round, and quite as valuable as the white ones. *Colonel H Yule's Translation, Vol II Pp 235-37 Cathay.*—The northern part of modern China. *The Grand Khan.*—or the Khan of Khans, Kublai Khan, was the emperor of Chinese Tartary, when Marco Polo visited the land. *The gorgeous description of Marco Polo.*—The descriptions of endless wealth and magnificence of the eastern courts, as given by Marco Polo in the account of his "Travels." (Read the extract quoted above.)

**Page 56. Chronological.**—pertaining to precedence in time or date. **And it must not to an improvement.**—It must be borne in mind that the relation which subsisted between his enterprise and that of the Portuguese along the African coast was the same as that between the invention of a new thing altogether and the improvement upon old materials. *Each new discovery then preceded it.*—Each fresh discovery along the African coast was not a new thing at all, but only an additional progress made beyond the point last reached. *Waste of waters.*—illimitable expanse of the ocean.

**Page 57. Had most weight with.**—Exercised the greatest influence on the mind of. **The Cosmographia**

of **Cardinal Aliaco**,—or the "*Imago Mundi*" a work containing a collection, in Latin, of astronomical and cosmographical tracts Las Casas is of opinion that his writings had more effect in stimulating Columbus to his enterprise than those of any other author. "His work was so familiar to Columbus that he had filled its whole margin with Latin notes in his hand-writing, citing many things which he had read and gathered elsewhere. This book, which was very old; I had many times in my hands, and I drew some things from it, written in Latin by the said admiral Christopher Columbus to verify certain points appertaining to his history of which I before was in doubt" (*Las Casas*) *Disquisitions*,—discourses. *Salamander*,—According to the middle age superstition salamander was a creature in human shape which lived in fire The word is now used to denote a species of reptiles. *Pigmy*,—a person of a very small stature, dwarf **Sea-serpent**—a huge animal like a serpent, inhabiting the sea The following is a sea-man's account of the monster —.

"I ran immediately to the side and saw a serpent of enormous magnitude floating on the water Its head rose about seven feet above the surface. The colour of the animal in all its visible parts was black and the skin appeared smooth and free from scales Its head was about as long as that of a horse, but was the perfect head of a serpent, terminating on the upper part in a flattened surface We could not distinguish its eyes I saw it clearly from seven to eight minutes, it swam in the same direction as the sloop, and went nearly as quickly Its back consisted of humps or rings of the size of a large barrel separated by intervals of about three feet ... The tail was beneath the water. The part of the animal which I actually saw measured about fifteen feet in length, the movement of its rings seemed undulatory" *Mangin's Mysterius of the Ocean*

**Page 58.** *Western passage to the Indies*.—"The way by the west to the Indies"—P 55.

*He was also confirmed* Paulo Toscanelli. "To demonstrate more clearly the facility of arriving at India in that direction he (Toscanelli) sent him a map, projected partly according to Ptolemy, and partly recording to the descriptions of Marco Polo, the Venetian. The eastern coast of Asia was depicted in front of the western coasts of Africa and Europe, with a moderate space or

ocean between them, in which were placed at convenient distances Cipango, Antilla, and the other islands. Columbus was greatly animated by the letter and chart of Toscanelli, who was considered one of the ablest cosmographers of the day"—*W. Irving*

*Detractors*,—defamers ; slanderers. *The well-known expedient end*.—The famous anecdote of the egg is thus described by W. Irving.—

Pedro Gonzalez de Mendoza, the grand admiral of Spain, and the first subject of the realm, invited Columbus to a banquet (on his return from the newly discovered continent) and assigned him the most honourable place at table. At this repast is said to have occurred the well known anecdote of the egg. A shallow courtier present, impatient of the honours paid to Columbus, and meanly jealous of him as a foreigner, abruptly asked him whether he thought that, in case he had not discovered the Indies, there were not other men in Spain who would have been capable of the enterprise? To this Columbus made no immediate reply, but taking an egg, invited the company to make it stand on one end. Every one attempted it, but in vain, whereupon he struck it upon the table so as to break the end, and left it standing on the broken part, illustrating in this simple manner, that when he had once shown the way to the New World, nothing was easier than to follow it."

*Was not itself original*.—The expedient resorted to by Columbus was not for the first time hit upon by him, although the credit is attributed to him.

*Cupola*,—the hemispherical roof which covers a circular building, dome. *Cathedral*,—the see or seat of a bishop, the principal church in a diocese

Page 59. Rumours of drift-wood *implements*.—This refers to the report given by one Martin Vicenti, a pilot in service of the King of Portugal, that after sailing 450 leagues to the west of Cape St. Vincent, he had taken from the water a piece of carved wood, which evidently had not been laboured with an iron instrument. As the winds had drifted it from the west, it might have come from some unknown land in that direction." *W. Irving*.

Pedro Correa, brother-in-law of Columbus, is also cited as having seen, on the island of Porto Santo, a similar piece of wood, which had drifted from the same quarter.

*Some savage implement*,—some rude kind of instrument as used by the savages, as pointed flints used as

knives or arrow-heads, the use of metals having been unknown to them *Mammoth reeds*,—reeds of an enormous size **Mammoth**—The Russian name of an extinct species of elephant, nearly allied to the elephant of India. It was thickly covered with hair of three sorts In the year, 1799, one of these animals, in an entire state, thawed out of an ice-bank, near the mouth of a river in the north of Siberia Its remains have been found upon both continents This word is often used adjectively, for *very large*, as, a mammoth ox, mammoth reeds *Those indigenous to India*,—Those reeds growing in India, (*viz*, *bamboo*)

*Of mammoth reeds Ptolemy's India*,—“He had heard also from the King of Portugal, that *reeds of an immense size* had floated to some of those islands from the west, in the description of which Columbus thought he recognised *the immense reeds said by Ptolemy to grow in India*”—*W Irving*.

*Even of two corpses . . . Africa*—“Information is likewise noted, given by the inhabitants of the Azores, of trunks of huge pine-trees, of a kind that did not grow upon any of the islands, wafted to their shores by the westerly winds, but specially of *the bodies of two dead men*, cast upon the island of Flores, *whose features differed from those of any known race of people*”—*W Irving*

*Note*—The cause of these strange things being wafted was not merely the westerly winds, but also the great American current, called the *Gulf Stream*

*One of the Azores,—viz, Flores Presenting Africa*,—exhibiting bodily features which entirely differed from those of any European or African race, or “of any known race of people” *Confirmations theory*,—circumstances strongly corroborating his great scheme of discovering another world like evidences adduced from the Holy Bible The corroborating incidents were accepted by Columbus almost as gospel-truth *Colombo el Mozo*,—see note on Page 49 “*First admiral of the family*,”—this is quoted from the 3rd line of Page 49 *Merchantman*,—trading vessel. *Privateer*—A ship or vessel of war owned and equipped by a *private* man or by individuals, at their own expense, and having a commission from government to seize or plunder the ships of an enemy in war. *Grappled*,—lay



fast hold on, with hooks, and contended with, in close fight *Hand-to-hand struggle*,—fight or conflict in close quarters

**The convent of All Saints**—Nunnery dedicated to *All Saints* or *All Hallows*. In 610 the Pope of Rome ordered that the heathen pantheon should be converted into a Christian Church, and dedicated to the honour of all martyrs. Hence the festival of *All Saints*, which was first held on May 1, but in 834 (A. D.) it was changed to November 1.

*Services of the Church*,—sermons, prayers, masses, and other proceedings of the church. *Already mentioned*,—P. 13. *Advanced outpost in African discovery*—A far off station situated on the line of African discoveries. *On the high road to Guinea*,—On the much-frequented way leading to Guinea. *Shrouded*,—enveloped, concealed

**Page 61.** *The unsuccessful .Genoa . project*,—Helps seems to have been of opinion that Columbus applied to the Senate of Genoa for patronage before he did so to the court of Portugal. But—

"The learned and careful Munoz states his opinion that Columbus went immediately from Portugal to Genoa, and made a personal proposition to that Government, but met with a contemptuous refusal"—*Major*

*W. Irving* is also of the same opinion, and says —

"The immediate movements of Columbus on leaving Portugal are involved in uncertainty. It is said that about this time he made proposition of his enterprise, in person, as he had formerly done by letter, to the Government of Genoa

*Embroiled as it was in costly wars*,—Involved as the Portuguese government was in wars with foreign powers, which entailed it a heavy cost Portugal, was at this time embroiled in war with Spain

"The political position of Portugal, engrossed as it was with its wars with Spain, rendered the thoughts of an application for an extensive fleet of discovery for the time worse than useless"—*Major*

**According to Fernando**—*Of* —"Of this audience (with John II.) we have two accounts, written in somewhat of an opposite spirit, one by his son, Fernando, the other by Joam de Barros, the Portuguese historiographer. *The King*, according to Fernando, *listened to his father with great attention* .... His father, however, supported

his proposition by such excellent reasons, that the king was induced to give his consent. The only difficulty that remained was the term. Barros, on the other hand attributes the seeming acquiescence of the king, merely to the importunities of Columbus. He considered him, says the historian, a vain-glorious man, fond of displaying his abilities, and given to fantastic fancies—*W Irving*.

*Qualified*,—modified, limited. *Terms*,—conditions of the agreement. *The king referred, a committee Affairs*,—

"He referred the proposition to a learned *junto*, charged with all matters relating to maritime discovery. This *junto* was composed of two able cosmographers, masters Roderigo and Joseph, and the king's confessor Diego Ortiz de Cazadilla, bishop of Ceuta, a man greatly reputed for his learning, a Castilian by birth, and generally called Cazadilla, from the name of his native place. This scientific body treated the project as extravagant and visionary."—*W Irving*

*Boards had come to regard enemies*—Committees had begun looking upon the originators of some scheme as naturally opposed to their interest. *Adverse*,—unfavourable. *The Bishop of Ceuta*,—Cazadilla, (see above) *Episcopal bad faith*.—Dishonesty or breach of trust of a clergyman (who is least expected to be capable of it) *Who had only stolen the idea of it*,—who had dishonestly availed themselves of the advantage thus gained—*viz*, from the detailed plan submitted by Columbus to the Board of —

"Their design was to procure from Columbus a detailed account of his plan that it might be submitted to the council, and then, under the false pretext of conveying provisions to the Cape Verde Islands, to despatch a caravel on the voyage of discovery. King Joao (John), deviating from his general character for prudence and generosity, yielded to their insidious advice, and their plan was acted upon"—*Major*.

"The caravel stood westward for several days, until the weather became stormy, when the pilots, seeing nothing but an immeasurable waste of wild tumbling waves still extending before them, lost all courage, and put back, ridiculing the project of Columbus as extravagant and irrational"—*W. Irving*

## CHAPTER III

*Addressed himself*,—applied. *Here, he addressed part in it*,—*cf*.—

"The first and indisputable trace we have of Columbus after leaving Portugal, is in the south of Spain, in 1485, where we find him seeking his fortune among the Spanish nobles, several of whom had vast possessions, and exercised almost independent sovereignty in their domains. Foremost among these were the Dukes of Medina Sidonia and Medina Celi, who had estates like principalities lying along the sea-coast, with ports and shipping and hosts of retainers at their command

*Extensive possessions*,—vast dominions ("like principalities") *Incline them expedition*,—Make them favourably disposed towards the undertaking of a voyage of discovery. *The Cardinal of Spain*—The Grand Cardinal of Spain was at this time Pedro Gonzalez de Mendoza, (see P 58 *The anecdote of the egg*) *Maintained*,—entertained

**Page 64**—*It was one for the queen herself*—The enterprise was so important in its character that it was fit to be undertaken by no less a personage than the Queen of Spain herself (Isabella was the Queen at this time, and Ferdinand, the King) *Caught*,—been embued with *Commending*,—recommending that the enterprise might meet with the patronage of the sovereign *Juncture*, crisis *Singularly inopportune for*,—peculiarly unfavourable to *Peaceful project*,—a scheme fit to be taken up at the time of peace

The war with the Moors—The Saracens or Arabs first invaded Spain in 711, A D The Saracens, beset by the Christians, called in the assistance of the Moors, who seized the dominions they came to protect, and subdued the Saracens in 1091 In Spanish history the terms *Moors*, *Saracens* and *Arabs* are often synonymous Alphonsus I, of Navarre defeated them in many battles, 1118 A D The Moors began the kingdom of Granada, being their last refuge from the power of the Christians, 1238 Alphonsus XI, of Leon and Castile slew 200,000 Moors in one battle, for three leagues around the country was covered with the dead, 1327 The power of the Moors in Spain was completely overthrown by Ferdinand V, who took Granada in 1492 It was just a few years before the surrender of Granada that Columbus sought his fortunes at the court of Spain which was then at Cordova The whole force of united Spain was now exerted in the chivalrous enterprise of the Moorish conquest. The victorious armies of Ferdinand and Isabella were continually advancing and pressing this fierce people within narrower limits. Columbus found the city of Cordova in all the bustle of military preparation The court was like a military camp, the king and queen were surrounded by the flower of Spanish chivalry. This was,

therefore an unpropitious moment to urge a suit like that of Columbus, upon the attention of the sovereigns, who had scarcely a single moment of leisure throughout this eventful year.

*Raging*,—being waged. *Driven back*.—pressed back—"within narrower limits" *Contesting*. . . . *ground*,—fighting furiously for the smallest patch of land. *Heart of the kingdom*,—central portion of their own kingdom of Granada. *Actively*,—vigorously—**The campaign** . . .

**to the cross**—The grand military operation of which the ultimate result was the complete humiliation of the Mahommedan power in Spain (*viz* the Moors) to that of the Christians of the united kingdom under Ferdinand and Isabella. *The crescent*,—or the new moon. The crescent being the national ensign of the Mahommedans, the word here signifies the *Moslem power* itself. Similarly, *the cross* signifies the power of the Christians, it being the common emblem of nationality of all the Christian people. *The Peninsula*,—Spain and Portugal are together called the *Iberian Peninsula* or *the Peninsula*. *Which*,—stands for "subjugation" *Clang of arms*,—sharp sound made by the collision, or striking together, of weapons. *Bustle of warlike preparation*,—stir or tumult caused by vast military preparations.

**Page 65** *Columbus was not . . . . obtain*,—it was hardly possible for Columbus to be able to draw *Slight and superficial attention to*,—insufficient, or cursory notice of. *Pressing internal affairs of kingdoms*,—urgent matters relating to the internal management or judicial, civil or executive administration of kingdoms. *Audience*,—lit. hearing, i. e. interview. *Treasurer of the Household*,—or, rather, as Irving says, Comptroller of the treasury of Castile or the Accountant General. "Took delight in great things,"—translation of—"Que tenia gusto en cosas grandes" *Hearing*,—audience. *Dismiss*,—send away. *Abruptly*,—at once, immediately. *Conference*,—meeting for discussion or for the adjustment of differences. *Referring*,—entrusting for final decision. *Confessor*,—a priest who hears the confessions of others and has power to grant them absolution. *Hernando de Talavera*,—Irving and others write.—*Fernando* instead of *Hernando* *Archbishop*,

—Chief bishop, who superintends the bishops in his province *Functionary*,—officer, holder of an office. *Summoned*,—called, convened. *Junta*,—a council or meeting.

*A junta of cosmographers*.—This interesting conference relative to the proposition of Columbus, took place in Salamanca, the great seat of learning in Spain. It was held in the Dominican convent of St. Stephen, in which he was lodged and entertained with great hospitality during the course of the examination. This council of clerical sages was composed of professors of astronomy, geography, mathematics, and other branches of science, together with various dignitaries of the church and learned friars"—*Irring*.

*Not a promising assemblage*,—great things could not be expected from the council on account of the deep-rooted prejudices of so many centuries. *Convened*,—called. *Here was a step . . . consideration*.—Hitherto he had been everywhere summarily dismissed as an idle speculator; and his project was not considered worthy of any very serious and earnest attention. At the conference of Salamanca, he gained his ground so far as the learned geographers were now called upon to examine his project itself, and not to consider whether it deserved any serious attention at all, as had hitherto been actually the case with it. *But it was impossible . . . unprejudiced*, the members of this conference were appointed, like jurors, to hear and decide the case of Columbus. As matters stood, they could not but be biased against his theory.

**Page 63. All inventors . ignorance.**—When any new and original thing is devised and introduced into any society, the ignorance and dull-headedness of the leading men of the time are indirectly proved; so they are naturally reluctant to recognise the merit of the inventor, and when they cannot help doing it, their jealousy is roused and vanity is shockingly wounded. *The cosmographical pedants*,—the geographers who made a vain display of their learning which was really shallow. *Pedant*,—a person who makes a vain and unsuitable display of his learning. *Accustomed to beaten tracks*,—being in the habit of frequenting the same path,—i. e. cultivating old and hackneyed subjects. *Resented centuries*—Were provoked at the effrontery with

which Columbus, who was looked upon as a stranger bent upon making his fortune by undertaking a hazardous enterprise, attempted to upset the deep-rooted convictions of the people entertained for several centuries preceding *Persons wise in nautical matters*,—persons well-versed in matters relating to navigation. *As had preceded mariner*,—who lived before Columbus—the navigator of Genoa. *Never could have his mind*,—could, by no means, have disregarded or passed by carelessly so important a matter the idea of which had now struck Columbus

“The others appear to have intrenched themselves behind one dogged position, that after so many profound philosophers and cosmographers had been studying the form of the world, and so many able navigators had been sailing about it for several thousand years, it was presumption in an ordinary man to suppose that there remained such a vast discovery for him to make.”—*W. Irving*

**The middle ages**,—A term of no definite period, but varying a little with almost every nation. In universal history, it was from the overthrow of the Roman empire to the Revival of Letters. (The 5th to the 15th century) *Moreover, as the cloister*,—besides, as learning during the Middle Ages—the period ranging over the 5th and 15th centuries,—was confined to clergymen *Cloister*,—(Lit) A place inclosed or shut up; a monastery or nunnery.

“Religion and science were at that time, and more specially in that country closely associated. The treasures of learning were immured in monasteries, and the professors’ chairs were exclusively filled from the cloister.”—*W. Irving*.

*Were clerical*,—belonged to the class of clergymen. *Combined*,—united *Crush*,—overwhelm. *Theological*,—pertaining to divinity or the science of God and of divine things *Scripture*,—the Bible *Adduced*,—quoted *Refute*,—disprove. *Spherical shape of the earth*,—the shape of the earth like that of a sphere or ball. *Weighty*,—influential. **The Fathers of the Church**.—The ecclesiastical writers of the first centuries, as Polycarp, Jerome, &c *Overthrow*,—upset, i. e., to disprove completely **Texts of Scripture were adduced.... of the earth**.—

"To the simplest proposition, the spherical form of the earth, were opposed figurative texts of scripture. They observed that in the Psalms the heavens are said to be extended like a hide, that is, according to commentators, the curtain or covering of a tent, which, among the ancient pastoral nations, was formed of the hides of animals; and that St Paul, in his Epistle to the Hebrews, compares the heavens to a tabernacle, or tent, extended over the earth, which they thence inferred must be flat"—*W. Irving*.

**The texts** referred to run as follows.—

"Who coverest thyself with light as with a garment—who stretchest out the heavens like a curtain"—*Psalms 104, 2*

"It is he that sitteth upon the circle of the earth, and the inhabitants thereof are as grasshoppers, that stretcheth out the heavens as a curtain, and spreadeth them out as a tent to dwell in"—*Isaiah XL 22*

"We have such an high priest, who is set on the right hand of the throne of the Majesty in the heavens. A minister of the sanctuary, and of the true tabernacle, which the Lord pitched, and not man"—*Hebrews VIII 1, 2*

**The weighty authority of the Fathers of the Church :**

"Columbus was assailed with citations from the Bible and the Testament the book of Genesis, the psalms of David, the prophets, the epistles, and the gospels. To these were added the expositions of various Saints and reverend commentators—Several of them (members of the junta) stoutly contradicted the fundamental position of Columbus, supporting themselves by quotations from Lactantius and St. Augustine, who were considered in those days as almost evangelical authority. The passage cited from Lactantius to confute Columbus is in a strain of gross ridicule, unworthy of so grave a theologian. "Is there any one so foolish," he asks "as to believe that there are antipodes, &c." (*See Text*). The idea of the roundness of the earth," he adds, "was the cause of inventing this fable of the antipodes, with their heels in the air; for these philosophers having once erred, go on in their absurdities, defending one with another."

**Antipodes**—(Gr *anti*, against, and *podos*, Sans. पद, a foot) Those whose feet are placed against the feet of others, those who live on the other side of the globe, and whose feet are directly opposite to ours. *Topsy turvy*,—in an inverted posture; with the top or head downwards. *Host*,—a large number.

**Page 67.** *Put in evidence*—Adduced as proof *Confronted*,—opposed; faced. *Conservatism*,—opinion in favour of existing institutions. *Bigotry*,—blind or unreasonable zeal in favour of a religion. *Acuteness*,—keenness of intellect. *The great difficulty*, *unteaching*,—The great obstacle that lay in the path of Columbus consisted not in actually instructing the people he had come into contact with, but in removing the deep-seated prejudices which were several thousand years old, from their minds—thus making them fit to receive the seeds of wisdom. The exact language used by Las Casas runs as follows —

"It was requisite, before Columbus could make his solutions and reasonings understood, that he should remove from his auditors those erroneous principles on which their objections were founded,—a task always more difficult than that of teaching the doctrine."

*Promulgating*,—inculcating, preaching. *Eradicating*, rooting out, removing completely. *The judges*,—those that were appointed to hear and decide his cause. *In fine*, in short. *To determine anything*,—to decide any course, *i e*, "to engage in an enterprise of the kind." *Such weak grounds*,—such flimsy basis of materials as had been advanced by Columbus. *Taken*,—entertained. *The wars at present on their hands*,—the wars in which they were now engaged, *viz* the war with Portugal, with Granada, &c. *Solicitation*,—earnest prayer, supplication. *Lasted*,—continued for

**Page 68.** *Though short in narration*,—although occupying when described, a small space of time. *In transaction*,—in taking place, in happening. *The movements which the war necessitated*,—the continual migrations from one place to another which the varying fortunes of the war rendered unavoidable.

"The Castilian Court departed from Salamanca early in the spring of 1487 and repaired to Cordova, to prepare for the campaign against Malaga. „For upwards of a year the court was in a state of continual migration; part of the time in Saragossa, part of the time invading the Moorish territories by the way of Muroia, and part of the time in Valladolid and Medina del Campo"—*W Irving*

*From time to time*,—occasionally. *Billeted*,—quartered or lodged by order of the sovereigns. *Public functionary*,



Government officer *Andalusia*,—a large province in the southern portion of Spain.

"A royal order was issued for lodgings to be provided for Columbus at Seville, and the magistrates of all cities and towns through which he might pass, on his way, were commanded to furnish accommodations gratis for himself and his attendants. A provision of the kind was necessary in those days, when even the present wretched establishments called *posadas*, for the reception of travellers, were scarcely known"—*W Irving*

*This*,—viz to follow the movements of the court as a suitor, and hopelessly wait for the result *A very up-hill task*,—a very difficult task, (like the act of ascending a hill.)

*An experience . lot of Columbus*,—a practical experience more varied than that of Columbus

Las Casas fought bravely the battle of the oppressed and down-trodden native Indians, and in his ardent philanthropic career, he crossed the Atlantic sixteen times to plead the cause of the oppressed in the court of Spain. He had thus gained a varied experience of the wearisomeness of a suitor's life.

*Which fell to the lot of Columbus*,—which Columbus was destined to suffer under *What it was to endure small authority*,—how painful it was to brook the indifferent, contemptuous delay and slight and disregard of men of shallow intellect who happen to occupy some petty public office and make much of the slight power with which they are vested. *Comprehended*,—actually conceived, or realised. *Belongs to*,—appertains to *Transaction of any affair* . . *co-operate*—Management and performance of a matter which passes through various hands of a complex organism like the government of a country, in which many persons have to work together. *Suit*,—a seeking for some favour by petition or application, a solicitation.

*N.B.*—The suit is compared to a battle, because Columbus had to fight single-handed for the longed-for patronage of a government against the scoffings, sneers, prejudices, vanity, &c., of the nobles and prelates he had to deal with, and the indifference, slights and evasions of the princes.

*Prolifex*,—protracted, so tedious, wearisome. *Having turned against him*,—having proved unfavourable to his interests. *Discomfiture*,—disappointment. *Dreary period*

of a suitor's life,—wearisome portion of his career when he was an applicant for favour at the Spanish court.

**Page 69.** *Close*, minute *Bitter*, painful *Not untasted, i-e*, tasted, enjoyed. *His beloved Beatrice*,—his lady-love, Beatrice Euriquez.

"While thus lingering in idle suspense in Cordova, he became attached to a lady of the city, Beatrice Euriquez by name, of a noble family, though in reduced circumstances. Their connexion was not sanctioned by marriage, yet he cherished sentiments of respect and tenderness for her to his dying day. She was the mother of his second son, Fernando, born in the following year (1487) whom he always treated on terms of perfect equality with his legitimate son Diego, and who after his death, became his historian.

*Believed in him*,—placed implicit faith in his theory. *But love idea*,—although Columbus most ardently loved his Beatrice, yet his passionate attachment was not of such a type as to detain him at home so that he might enjoy the sweet company of his lady-love, and to make him abandon the noble project which always spurred him on to have it realised. *Goaded*,—(Lit.) Pushed on with a goad,—a pointed instrument used to stimulate, a beast to move faster, hence, impelled, stimulated, actuated. **Or perhaps that love-nobler sort**,—or perhaps, instead of keeping him by the side of his sweet-heart, his love served only to stimulate him to accomplish loftier aims, and achieve higher glories, for the sake of his beloved one, as it is customary with lovers of a nobler type, whose hearts are inflamed, not with the ignoble desire for sensual pleasures; but with that sacred warmth which brings on a heavenly bliss, and a yearning after the fulfilment of some glorious ideal. *Shared*,—caught *Enthusiasm*,—zeal *Urged onward*,—spurred him on towards the fulfilment of his project; stimulated him to realise his wished-for object. *Guardian*,—"Prior." The monastery of **La Rabida**—*Irving* writes—"The convent of La Rabida still exists, but is inhabited merely by two friars, with a noviciate and a lay brother. It is situated on a hill, surrounded by scattered forest of pine trees and overlooks the low sandy country of the sea-coast, and the windings of

the river by which Columbus sallied forth upon the ocean". It is an ancient convent of Franciscan friars, dedicated to Santa Maria de Rabida

Had exchanged . . cloister—Had given up his office of the Queen's confessor, and thus ceased living in the court, full of stir and tumult as it always is, and adopted, in place of it, the peaceful life of a prior passed in the cultivation of science and divinity

*Palos*—Palos de Moguer, a sea-port of Andalusia. *Sea-faring population*,—inhabitants who were mostly seamen or mariners "The inhabitants of Palos were among the most enterprising navigators of Spain and made frequent voyages to the recently discovered islands and countries on the African coast"—*W. Irving Maritime interests*,—nautical advantages *Principal men*,—leading inhabitants *The long winter evenings*,—the winter evenings appear to be long, on account of the tediousness caused by comparative inactivity as well as the increase of the duration of nights in winter *Society*,—company. *Discussing questions of*,—holding debates upon. *Astronomy*,—the science which teaches the knowledge of the heavenly bodies

**Page 70.** Among these Martin Alonzo Pinzon,—  
 "among these was Martin Alonzo Pinzon, the head of a family of wealthy and experienced navigators of the place, celebrated for their adventurous expeditions"—*W. Irving*  
*The village doctor*,—physician practising at Palos, who possessed some knowledge of science And one can fancy . . *simple life*,—it can only be imagined how greatly were this small group of villagers struck with wonder at the originality of the projects of Columbus, and, how, like the rays of the sun, did this novel idea suddenly flash through their rather dull and gloomy minds, and break the monotony and tediousness of their innocent village-life *Somewhat skilled in physical science*,—tolerably well-versed in material science,—e g (Physics, Chemistry, Astronomy, &c.)  
*Worthy of notice*,—worth noticing or observing *A person who* . . *history*,—an insignificant individual whose name is mentioned in the annals of mankind only on one occasion, and in a single sentence, as it were, should have so materially affected them (annals, history) with his personal influence as Garcia Hernandez did, by turning the tide of

human fortune into a different channel altogether. *Who was probably ... little understood*,—who was, most probably, a man possessed of abilities of a far higher order than those of his fellow-villagers, and who was very often heard complaining, as a talented man in such an environment, generally does, of the inevitable decree of destiny in placing him in a society where he had hardly the slightest chance of his superior merit being appreciated at all. He was perhaps a man of superior abilities, which could not be displayed for want of sufficient scope. *See Notes on Page 53 Superior attainments*,—talents or acquirements of a higher order. *Those around him*,—his fellow-villagers. *He could be so little understood*,—his intrinsic merit had so little chance of being appreciated by those around him. *Now, however ... before the world*,—let us, now, however, make it clear, how, without the slightest degree of difficulty and in one single effort, he had succeeded in accomplishing a memorable deed which can hardly be performed even with repeated strokes of perseverance, by the ordinary run of men, who have been making much noise in this world while living in it during their long lifetime. *Had abandoned his suit at court in disgust*,—had given up his solicitation at court for royal patronage, in great annoyance. *All his griefs*. *Perez*,—he communicated all his sorrows, difficulties and disappointments, to Juan Perez—with a belief in the faithfulness of the venerable gentleman.

*N<sup>o</sup> B*—W. Irving, on the authority of an authenticated testimony of Garcia Fernandez (or Hernandez) writes that the Prior while passing by the gate of the convent, accidentally made himself acquainted with Columbus who was accompanied by his son Diego, and was asking of the porter a little bread and water for his child.

**Page 71.** *Greater by allowing ... his project*,—more prosperous and powerful by permitting it to undertake and act up to his designs, and thus to make an exceedingly precious acquisition to their existing dominions, by the discovery of the new world. *The monk, .. .... the skilled*

cosmographer, & e Juan Perez, Garcia Hernandez (or Fernandez) and Columbus. *The propositions*, so little council,—the questions and arguments with which the last mentioned member of the little group—viz; Columbus was so familiar with such a bitter experience, having had to discuss them over and over again before different sets of people with no very satisfactory result after all. *The affection of* before them,—it was a very easy affair for Juan Perez, by reason of his fatherly affection for Columbus, and Hernandez, by virtue of his learning, to comprehend systematically the chain of various arguments unfolded before them enthusiastically by Columbus, in course of the long discussion that had ensued on the subject *Feasibility of his undertaking*,—practicability of his enterprise *The difficulty enterprise*,—the obstacle in their path which next appeared to them as almost insurmountable, consisted, not in being able to place implicit faith in Columbus's theory, but in making those believe in it who possessed influence enough to help forward the undertaking so as to make it a success. *Upon this point*, & e upon finding out proper persons, who could exert their influence over the sovereigns in persuading them to lend a helping hand to this affair *In consequence*,—being convinced of the soundness of the arguments adduced by Perez. *Remitted*,—sent, forwarded *Renew his suit*,—once more apply to the court for patronage as he had done before *Broken off*,—stopped, put an end to *On the ground of*,—on the score of, on account of *Largeness*,—exorbitancy, extravagance

Page 72 *His opponents*,—his antagonists, specially, among them Fra Hernando de Talavera—"His terms were, however, pronounced inadmissible. Fernando de Talavera had always considered Columbus a dreaming speculator, or a needy applicant for bread, but to see this man, who had for years been an indigent and threadbare solicitor in his antechamber, assuming so lofty a tone, and claiming an office that approached to the awful dignity of the throne, excited the astonishment as well as the indignation of the prelate. He represented to Isabella that it would be degrading to the dignity of so illustrious a crown to lavish such distinguished honours upon a nameless stranger. Such terms, he observed, even in case of success, would be exorbitant, but in case of failure, would be cited with ridicule, as evidence of the gross credulity of the Spanish monarchs."—*Iring*

*An air of trifling*,—an appearance of levity. *Admiral*,—the chief commander of fleet or navy. *Viceroy*,—(L *Vice*=in place of, old Fr. *Roy*=a king) one who governs in place of a king. *Accounting for*,—Giving reasons for, explaining the motive of. *Perseverance in making them*,—steadfastness in adhering to the demands he had made. *Even to the risk of total failure*,—proceeding to such an extremity as even to have run the hazard of breaking off the negotiation altogether. *Was but a step*,—was only a means to an end. *The greater undertakings*,—the realisation of nobler aims, and the achievement of more laudable enterprises. *Which he had in view*,—which he fondly cherished, or longed for. *Of going to Jerusalem . . . crusade*,—of going to the Holy Land and waging another holy war against the Infidels in order to rescue the holy sepulchre from their power. The incident that gave rise to such an idea of undertaking another crusade, was the following:—

- "During this siege (of Granada) a circumstance took place which appears to have made a deep impression on the devout and enthusiastic spirit of Columbus. Two reverend friars arrived one day at the Spanish Camp, and requested admission to the sovereigns on business of great moment. They brought a message from the Grand Souldan of Egypt, threatening to put to death all the Christians in his dominions, to lay waste their convents and churches, and to destroy the sepulchre, if the sovereigns did not desist from the war against Granada. The menace had no effect in altering the purpose of the sovereigns, but Isabella granted a yearly and perpetual sum of 1000 ducats in gold (4269 dollars), for the support of the monks who had charge of the sepulchre. The representations of these friars of the sufferings and indignities to which Christians were subjected in the Holy Land, together with the arrogant threat of the Souldan, roused the pious indignation of the Spanish cavaliers, and many burned with ardent zeal once more to revive the contests of the faith on the sacred plains of Palestine. Columbus determined that should his projected enterprise be successful, he would devote the profits arising from his anticipated discoveries, to a crusade for the rescue of the holy sepulchre from the power of the Infidels. W. Irving.

**For Columbus carried. fifteenth.**—For Columbus was embued with the gallant self-sacrificing zeal for religion and for rescuing the Holy Sepulchre from the hands of the Infidels, which was the predominant zeal of the

entire Christendom of Europe throughout the twelfth century A D, and which was now cherished rather forcibly, at the fag-end of the fifteenth century,—a period characterised, to a certain extent, by an ignoble spirit of selfish individualism, completely devoid of the noble self-denying enthusiasm for religion *Chivalrous*,—pertaining to cavaliers or knights, gallant, warlike, noble *Chivalrous ideas of the 12th century*,—this alludes to the *Crusades*, which were carried on mainly during the 12th century A D, under the European Princes **The Crusade**, (*L cruz*, a cross) was a military expedition undertaken during the Middle Ages by authority of the Roman Catholic Church, for the recovery of the Holy Land,—the scene of Christ's life and sufferings—from the power of the Infidels or Mahammedans Several of these expeditions were carried on from Europe, under the banner of the *cross* The soldiers had crosses of different coloured cloth sewed upon their upper garments, and were hence called *crusaders* *Contrived*,—managed *Hearing*,—audience, interview *Cardinal Mendoza*,—The Grand Cardinal of Spain. *See Note on P 58, and P 63*

Page 73, *In order to meet .. expedition*—"The courtiers who treated with him were indignant at such a demand One observed with a sneer that it was a shrewd arrangement which he proposed, whereby he was secure, at all events, of the honour of a command, and had nothing to lose in case of failure To this Columbus promptly replied, by offering to furnish one-eighth of the cost, on condition of enjoying an eighth of the profits To do this, he no doubt calculated on the proffered assistance of Martin Alonso Pinzon, the wealthy navigator of Palos"

*Set off*,—started from Santa Fe one day in January, but Irving says, in the beginning of February, 1492 *Still nothing was done*,—The negotiation dropped, on account of the counteracting influence of Hernando de Talavera, the nature of whose arguments has already been referred to *Receiver*,—a person appointed to receive and hold in trust money or other property *Ecclesiastical revenues*,—benefices or church incomes. *Devoted to*,—in favour of *With all the energy much at heart*,—with all the force and earnestness that a man can infuse into his words at a time when he knows full well that the last opportunity of advocating,

his most favourite subject will soon be gone, if he allows the present occasion to glide by 'in idleness *Throws,—lends, infuses Which he has much at heart,—*which he most fondly cherishes *It should . her,—*she should lack in the same noble spirit *He endeavoured monarch,—*he tried to rouse her feeling of jealousy for the sovereigns of the rival states *The enterprise might princes,—*the undertaking might be taken up by other rival sovereigns

*He told her that he wondered . other princes,—*"He did not confine himself to entreaties, but almost mingled reproaches expressing astonishment that a queen who had evinced the spirit to undertake so many great and perilous enterprises, should hesitate at one where the loss could be so trifling, while the gain might be incalculable What cause of regret to herself, of triumph to her enemies, of sorrow to her friends, should this enterprise, thus rejected by her, be accomplished by some other power!"—*Irving.*

*Then he said something Columbus,—*then made some remarks upon the honesty and sincerity of Columbus, and the soundness of his plans *Not unlikely great man,—*was, no doubt, sagacious enough to read the greatness of a man in his noble demeanour *Bearing,—*deportment, carriage *Intimated to,—*informed *That what was . nature,—*that what appeared to be totally impossible to geographers and other scientists from a theoretical point of view, might not be so in reality

**Page 74.** *For it is the . of the world,—*for it belongs to great and noble-minded sovereigns to explore the unknown wonders of the world —

"Neither would even his failure reflect disgrace upon the crown It was worth the trouble and expense to clear up even a doubt upon a matter of such importance, for it belonged to enlightened and magnanimous princes to investigate questions of the kind, and to explore the wonders and secrets of the universe."—*W. Irving*

*Those of neighbouring Portugal,—*the princes of the contiguous kingdom of Portugal, who were her rivals

*N B—*This refers to the explorations of the African coast under Prince Henry and others of Portugal

*Had gained this way,—*had won everlasting renown in this direction, *viz*, by making geographical discoveries *To set the expedition afloat,—*to fit out and launch the expedition *Was but,—*consisted only of *Well addressed*



*arguments*,—reasonings couched in bold, forcible, and impressive language. *Falling in, ds. ....prevailed*,—agreeing, as they actually did, with the arguments of Quintanilla, the Accountant-General, who was held in much esteem by the Queen, produced the desired effect *Till the finances had*. *Granada*,—till the revenues of the state were a little replenished so as to make up for the sink that was lately caused to them by an enormous sum of money having been expended for the recent conquest of Granada. *The plan . . .carried out*,—the scheme must immediately be carried into practice. *Pledge*,—pawn, to give or deposit as security for the payment of money borrowed *Kissed her hand*,—as a token of reverence for the noble impulse *Highly delighted at succeeding*,—highly rejoicing in finding their efforts attended with success *Alguazil*,—an inferior officer of justice in Spain; an orderly or a constable *Overtake*,—to catch up in the way. *The bridge of Pinos*,—about two leagues from Granada, at the foot of the mountain of Elvira,—a famous pass in the Moorish wars for many a desperate encounter between the Christians and Infidels.

**Page 75.** *Santa Fe*,—the military city which had been built in the Vega before Granada, after the conflagration of the royal camp *Agreement*,—contract *Secretary Coloma*,—"a perfect understanding being effected with the sovereigns, articles of agreement were ordered to be drawn out by Juan de Coloma, the royal secretary" *Not much proceedings*,—King Ferdinand is not seen to take an active part in all these transactions *He looked rather . . . Columbus*,—he viewed the proposals of Columbus with some degree of indifference. *Compeer*,—equal, mate, associate, i e, contemporary king *Henry VII viz*, of England *Did not hasten him*,—did not eagerly come forward to take up the same scheme which was laid before him *For that purpouse*,—viz, for submitting the plan to Henry VII of England.

**Page 76.** *It has not . . . King's sagacity*,—this particular act has never been considered to detract from the practical wisdom of Henry VII, King of England *Those who govern . . . immediate affairs*,—the rulers of territories are, as

a rule, in all ages, beset by adventurers and speculators of all sorts, and so it becomes their anxious look-out that they can smoothly go on managing, to the best of their power, those of their own affairs which directly affect their vital interests, without being deceived or in any hampered by some of the innumerable speculators by whom their courts are too often thronged *To clear the way about them,—* to avoid them, to steer clear of them *As well as they can,*—to the best of their power *It is not to be wondered at in men in power,*—it is not, therefore, a matter of great surprise that even good projects, from their being indiscriminately mixed up with bad ones, are sometimes neglected and rejected along with a host of other projects which are laid before men in authority for their favourable consideration and patronage, but the majority of which generally deserve the fate of being completely unnoticed, on account of the worthlessness of their character *Here, however, the ultimate, in the new world,*—that the English King Henry VII was right in not adopting the plan of discovering a continent across the Atlantic, may be proved by what actually followed such a project in the long run, for it will be very difficult to prove that Spain derived anything good from her excellent explorations and vast territories in the New World, but an inordinate thirst after gold or covetousness and the evils necessarily arising therefrom, not only in her officers sent thither, but also in the entire nation at home *Aught,—anything. Golden weakness,*—debasement of the national character (of the Spaniards) caused by an inordinate thirst after gold. There is a play or fun upon the word *golden*.

**Page 77.** *The two men,—viz, Columbus and Ferdinand. Uncontrolled sympathy,*—Unbridled or unchecked zeal. *And upon the whole not do more,*—such was the indifference of Ferdinand's character that our surprise is caused not so much for the fact that he did not take up the scheme with a greater amount of zeal than what he had actually shown, as for the fact that he was at all induced to have consented to invest Columbus with those powers which he had demanded.

**His own kingdom of Aragon**—"Though a younger son, Ferdinand had ascended the throne of Aragon, by inheritance, Castile he obtained by marriage, Granada and Naples by conquest. They (Ferdinand and Isabella) had separate claims to sovereignty, in virtue of their respective kingdoms, they had separate councils, and were often distant from each other in different parts of their empire, each exercising the royal authority. Yet they were so happily united by common views, common interests, and a great deference for each other, that this double administration never prevented a unity of purpose and action."

*Gone so far*,—extended his patronage to Columbus to such an extent. *Charged on Castile*,—realised from the treasury of his wife's kingdom of Castile. *Good natured sympathy with enthusiasts*,—sympathy or fellow-feeling for zealots (persons of ardent disposition) proceeding from a tenderness of heart. *Cool*,—indifferent. *Wary*,—over-cautious, and so, suspicious. "He was a great observer and judge of men, unparalleled in the science of the cabinet, he had more of bigotry than religion, his ambition was craving rather than magnanimous, his policy was cold, selfish, and artful." *Distrusted*,—suspected. "*Pauper pilot promising rich realms*,"—it is a translation of the line quoted in the foot-note of the text, meaning,—a navigator, although himself a beggar, promising to discover fertile lands full of valuable ore. *Their Catholic highnesses*,—or rather, their Catholic Majesties, *i. e.*, Ferdinand and Isabella, who were champions of Roman Catholicism, or Defenders of the Faith.

**Page 78** *He wishes to a tenth part merchandise*,—this condition was further modified by the 5th by which Columbus consented to bear one-eighth of the expenses, and in return to earn the eighth part of the profits. *Quality*,—capacity, function. *Mercantile matters*,—"causes and disputes arising out of traffic between those countries and Spain."

**Page 79** *The Vega*,—the plain. *Secretary Coloma*,—Juan de Coloma, the Royal Secretary. *Passport*,—a written license, from a sovereign or other proper authority which enables one to pass with safety in foreign countries or seas. *Commendatory letter*,—or a letter

of recommendation, *i e*, a letter which presents one to the favourable notice or reception of others *The Grand Khan*,—Kublai Khan, the Emperor of Cathay, as described by Marco Polo. *Oriental potentate*,—eastern chief or king

**Page 80** *Armed*,—equipped *Commissions*,—mandates, or documents investing him with offices and authority. *Knot*,—circle, or group *The monastery*,—the convent of La Rabida. *Were sufficiently*. *delight*—gave an adequate expression to their great joy *At the scheme launched*—because the project which they believed to be true and supported, was now on the point of being taken in hand *Palencia*,—(the ancient *Pallantia*),—an ancient city in Spain, in old Castile, situated on the Carrion *Armada*,—a fleet of armed ships, a squadron

**Page 81** *Such an expedition*,—an expedition bound for an unknown region across the Atlantic *Press men into the service*,—impress or force men to accept service under him in the *armada* *Held aloof*,—remained indifferent, avoided taking service *The crazy project of a monomaniac*,—the wild and impracticable scheme of a man who was partly mad, especially in regard to a single subject.

*The Pinzons*. *their money*—"The influence and example of the Pinzons had a great effect in allaying this opposition and inducing many of their friends and relatives to embark It is supposed that they had furnished Columbus with funds to pay the eighth part of the expense which he was bound to advance. It is also said that Martin Alonso Pinzon was to divide with him his share of the profits"  
—*iring*

*The Pinzons*,—persons belonging to the family of navigators of Palos of which the head was Martin Alonso Pinzon *United exertions*,—joint efforts *Manned*,—equipped with men or sailors. *Provisioned*,—victualled, provided with provisions or articles of food *Burden*,—the contents of a ship; the quantity or number of tons a vessel will carry. *Yacht*—(Prond *yot*) a light and elegantly furnished vessel, used either for private parties of pleasure or as a vessel of state to convey princes, &c, from one place to another.

**Yachting**,—steadily patronised by royalty, has become now-a-days, a favourite pastime of the nobility and gentry, and is now so general that there are no fewer than 30 yacht clubs in the United Kingdom. One of these, the *Royal yacht squadron*, founded in 1815, has its head quarters at Cowes, Isle of Wight. At New York in the United States of America, there is an important club, called the *New York Yacht Club*.

In 1851, the hollow manner in which the crack yachts of the principal clubs of England were beaten by the yacht *America* of the *New York Yachting Club* shewed their owners and builders that they had still much to learn in the way of improvement. Some of the most remarkable performances of yachts are the voyage from New York to Liverpool of the *Charter Oak*, 23 tons, in 36 days; that of the *Sylvia*, 205 tons, from Halifax to Havre, in 16½ days; and the great *Atlantic yacht-race from New York to Cowes, in December 1866, which was won by the Henrietta, 205 tons, after a voyage of 14 days*.

**Cowes**,—*West*, a sea-port on the north coast of the Isle of Wight, beautifully situated on the Medina. Near this is Osborne House, a marine residence of the Queen.

**Ocean race**,—voyage undertaken in competition with other vessels.

**Page 82** *The Santa Maria*—"A ship of no considerable burden, was commanded by Columbus, as admiral, who gave it the name of *Santa Maria*, out of respect for the blessed Virgin whom he honoured with singular devotion"—*Robertson*. *That was decked throughout*,—furnished with a *flush deck*, or a continued floor from stern to stern, on one line. (Deck=The covering of a ship which constitutes a floor, made of timbers and planks). *Were decked fore and aft*,—were decked from one end of the vessels to the other. *Amidships*,—the middle of a ship with regard to her length and breadth.

*N B.*—Helps here evidently means that the ships were decked at the prow and stern, and were without deck in the centre. This is borne out by the context, as well as by the following extract from *Irving*—

"They (the ships) are delineated as open, and without deck in the centre, but built up high at the prow and stern, with fore castles and cabins for the accommodation of the crew. Peter Martyr, the learned contemporary of Columbus, says that only one of the three vessels was decked." This was no doubt, the *Santa Maria* which was commanded by Columbus himself.

*Stem*,—the circular piece of timber to which the two sides of a ship are united at the fore-end, the pointed part of the prow. *Stern*,—the hind part of a ship, which is opposite to the stem or prow. *Nina*,—otherwise spelt as *Nigna*

*The whole number, &c*—The total number of the crews of the three vessels, according to the statement of Helps, is seventy (70), which added to the number of other adventurers amounted to 120. But according to other authorities, the number of the crews was ninety (90)

Cf "There were also a physician, and a surgeon, together with various private adventurers, several servants, and *ninety mariners* making, in all, one hundred and twenty persons" *Irring* "The squadron, if it merits that name, was victualled for twelve months, and had on board *ninety men*, mostly sailors, together with a few adventurers who followed the fortune of Columbus, and some gentlemen of Isabella's court whom she appointed to accompany him" *Robertson*

*By the way*,—by the bye. *The British Isles*,—Great Britain and Ireland.

#### CHAPTER IV.

**Page 83.** [*Notice*, here begins Chapter IV, and not Chapter III, as printed in the text which is a typographical error]

*Friday*, not inauspicious in this case,—In other cases, Friday is popularly considered inauspicious, as it is associated in the minds of all Christians, as the day on which Jesus Christ was crucified. According to Mediæval romance, faeries and all the tribe of elves are converted into hideous animals on Friday and remain so till Monday. Friday is a fast-day in the Roman Catholic Church, because it was the day of Christ's crucifixion. Soames says.—"Adam and Eve ate the forbidden fruit on a Friday, and died on a Friday." In America, Friday is a lucky day, probably because, Columbus first discovered land on a Friday, and called it *San Salvador*; he set sail on a Friday, August 3, 1492. In Scotland it is a great day for weddings, but in England it is not.

Cf—"A *Friday tree*,—i. e., a trial, misfortune, or cross, so called from the "*accursed tree*,"—on which Christ was crucified on a Friday. *Inauspicious*,—(L. *In*, not; *avis*, a bird, *specio*, to observe). *Not bringing auspices* or

*omens of success*,—ill-omened, unlucky—*Confessed*,—Acknowledged their sins to a clergyman, (Here Juan Perez) with a view to obtain absolution from him *Received the sacrament*,—partook of the sacrament of the communion

*Sacrament*,—a solemn religious ordinance enjoined by Christ, to be observed by his followers, by which their special relation to him is created or their obligations to him are renewed and ratified. According to the Roman Catholic and Greek churches, the *Sacraments* are seven in number, *viz*, *baptism*, *confirmation*, the *Eucharist* or *Communion of the Lord's supper*, *penance*, *extreme unction*, *holy orders* and *matrimony*, according to the Protestants, the *sacraments* are only two, *viz*, *baptism*, and the *Eucharist* or the *Lord's supper*. When the word *sacrament* is used without any qualifying word, it means, the *Eucharist*, or the *Communion of the Lord's supper*. It is called a sacrament, because by commemorating the death and dying love of Christ, Christians avow their special relation to him, and renew their obligations to be faithful to their divine Master

*The Bar of Saltes*,—a small island formed by the arms of the Odiel, in front of the town of Huelva *Making for*,—proceeding in the direction of. *One can fancy*,—it can only be imagined rather than described *Watched the specks*. *west*,—looked intently upon the ships which conveyed on board them, their nearest and dearest ones, and did not go away from the port till the vessels appeared more and more diminished in size as they proceeded further and further, and at last disappeared altogether, and the sails dwindled into some dim white spots in the distant western horizon Tennyson has very vividly described, in his *Enoch Arden*, such a pathetic parting scene of a sailor from his wife and children from which the following lines are quoted —

"She when the day, that Enoch mentioned, came  
Borrow'd a glass, but all in vain perhaps she  
Could not fix the glass to suit her eye,  
Perhaps her eye was dim, hand tremulous,  
She saw him not and while he stood on deck  
Waving, the moment and the vessel past  
Even to the last dip of the vanishing sail  
She watched it and departed weeping for him,  
Then, though she mourned his absence as his grave  
Set her sad will no less to chime with his.

Tennyson in his *Queen Mary*, says —

The parting of a husband and a wife  
Is like the cleaving of a heart ;  
One half will flutter here, one there.

**As if from . kinsmen.**—Bidding their sailor relations and kinsfolk adieu for the last time as though they were dead, and the parting seemed to them like that at the grave of their nearest ones, during their funeral. Perhaps they then “drew a long,—long sigh, and wept a last adieu” *Was now fairly afloat*,—was now pretty well out at the sea. **And we may say. Providence his guide.**—And we may say, quoting the memorable words of Milton about the banishment of Adam and Eve from the Paradise, that the wide,—wide world was stretched before Columbus and it was now left to him to choose his own destination or “place of rest,” with God alone to help him in finding it out, protecting him from all manner of evils and dangers in course of his long and dreary journey of life. Just as Adam and Eve being banished by decree of God, from their blissful abode in the Paradise for Eve’s tasting the “forbidden fruit,” had to depend upon themselves in trying to find out their new “place of rest” in the wide world, so Columbus after setting sail from Spain, was now fairly out at the open sea, which lay before him as a vast expanse of illimitable dreary wilderness of waters, and had to depend entirely upon himself with God alone to help him in “ploughing the distant main,” and exploring the unknown firm land, where to enjoy the long expected rest and find his fondly cherished hopes realised.

The lines here quoted come adapted from Milton’s *Paradise Lost* —

“They looking back, all the eastern side beheld  
Of paradise, so late their happy seat,  
Waved over by that flaming brand ; the gate  
With dreadful faces thronged, and fiery arms.  
Some natural tears they dropt, but wiped them soon .  
*The world was all before them, where to choose  
Their place of rest, and Providence their guide.*  
They, hand in hand, with wandering steps and slow,  
Through Eden took their solitary way”

*Book XII. 641—49.*



**Page 84.** *His choice . did not fail him,—he was* after all successful in reaching his destination, and choosing it as his “place of rest” under the benign guidance of the Almighty and all-merciful God who did not disappoint him in his expectations, *i e*, Columbus succeeded after all in discovering the New World *About to change.*—On the point of changing *Wearry, dismal*—Tedious, and cheerless *Life of a suitor*—Career of a solicitor of some favour. *A struggle in which . . . fatal failure,*—a strenuous effort which, if not crowned with success, was sure to end in a very serious and utterly disgraceful failure, *i e*, his scheme was now put to a practical test, and now it was to be proved conclusively whether it was, on the one hand, the outcome of a mere plea for earning bread of a needy adventurer, or of the heated brain of a visionary, or on the other, of a mature, sound and far seeing judgment *Torn with disputes,*—annoyed, assailed and furiously attacked with opposing arguments of various antagonists *In a word,*—to be brief *My proposition mockery,*—my project was only scoffed and sneered at *Diary,*—a register of daily occurrences or observations

Columbus's own diary,—“When Columbus set sail on this memorable voyage, he commenced a regular journal, intended for the inspection of the Spanish sovereigns He proposed to keep it, as he afterwards observed, in the manner of the *Commentaries of Caesar* It opened with a stately prologue wherein were set forth the motives and views which led to his expedition ” He says,—“For this purpose I intend to write during this voyage, very punctually from day to day, all that I may do, and see, and experience as will hereafter be seen I propose to make a chart in which I will set down the waters and lands of the Ocean Sea in their proper situations, under their bearing ”

*Worth recording,*—so important as to deserve particular mention or notice

*Unshipped her rudder,*—“On the third day, the Pinta made signal of distress, her rudder was discovered to be broken and unhung This Columbus surmised to be done through the contrivance of the owners of the caravel to disable their vessel, and cause her to be left behind.”—*Irving.*

*Rudder*,—the instrument by which a ship is steered, that part of the helm which consists of a piece of timber, broad at the bottom, which enters the water, and is attached to the stern-post by hinges, on which it turns. *To be no accident*,—not to have been caused by chance.

*The owners of the vessel .. voyage*,—Gomez Rascon and Christoval Quintero—"They had been pressed into the service greatly against their will, and their caravel seized upon for the expedition, in conformity to the royal orders." Hence, they did not like the voyage at all.

*To refit*,—to equip or repair afresh *And to make some change in the cut of her sails*,—"The *latine sails* of the *Nina* were also altered into *square sails*, that she might work more steadily and securely, and be able to keep company with the other vessels"—*Irving*

[*N. B.*—According to *Irving*, the sails of the *Nina*, and not of the *Pinta*, as *Helps* says, were changed ]

**Page 85.** *Cruising in the offing*,—sailing hither and thither, on that part of the sea which is at a good distance from the shore.

*Three Portuguese govt. vessels*.—"While taking in wood and water and provisions in the island of Gomera, a vessel arrived from Ferro, which reported that three Portuguese caravals had been seen hovering off that island, with the intention, it was said of capturing Columbus. The admiral suspected some hostile stratagem on the part of the king of Portugal, in revenge for his having embarked in the service of Spain; he therefore lost no time in putting to sea, anxious to get far from those islands, and out of the track of navigation ..."—*Irving*.

*Gomera*,—one of the most westerly of the Canary Islands. *Struck boldly out to sea*,—sailed or darted suddenly and courageously into the region of discovery,—into the hitherto unknown parts of the Atlantic *Respectable men*,—used within inverted commas, because the phrase is a translation of "*Hombres honrados*." *Swear*,—solemnly declare or affirm on oath. *Substantial. . . proceedings*,—genuine and material novelty of his own doings and movements *These scattered. . . that originality*,—disconnected and isolated hearsay reports, obtained now and then, about the existence of land in the far west like these which were

likely to be cited afterwards, as actually many of them were, to disparage the credit of the originality of the idea which is really due to Columbus and which led to the collection of such reports *Depreciate*,—take from; or detract from the worth of *Entry*,—fact-entered or recorded *Their unknown way*,—"the way to the unknown regions" —

"On losing sight of this last trace of land, the hearts of the crews failed them. They seemed literally to have taken leave of the world. Behind them, was everything dear to the heart of man; country, family, friends, life itself, before them everything was chaos, mystery and peril. In the perturbation of the moment, they despaired of ever more seeing their homes. Many of the rugged seamen shed tears, and some broke into loud lamentations"—*Living*

*Is little more than*,—Is not a whit better than *Log-book*,—A book into which are transcribed the contents of the *log-board*, which consists of two boards, shutting like a book, and divided into columns, containing the hours of the day and night, direction of the wind, course of the ship, &c

Page 86 *Rather two rates*,—"He kept two reckonings, one correct, in which the true way of the ship was noted, and which was retained in secret for his own government, in the other, which was open to general inspection, a number of leagues was daily subtracted from the sailing of the ship, so that the crews were kept in ignorance of the real distance they had advanced"—*Living*

*Private heed*,—Personal guidance or care *The needle declined*,—the magnetic needle of the compass made its variation

*Such a variation*,—Such a change "They were struck with an appearance no less astonishing than now. They observed that magnetic needle, in their compass, did not point exactly to the polar star, but varied towards the west, and as they proceeded, this variation increased. This appearance, which is now familiar, though it still remains one of the mysteries of nature, into the cause of which the sagacity of man hath not been able to penetrate, filled the companions of Columbus with terror"—*Robertson*

*Tropical birds*,—Birds inhabiting the Tropical regions of the globe, that is, the regions lying on both sides of the equator within two parallels of latitude, called the Tropic of Cancer and the Tropic of Capricorn, and including that portion of the globe which is called the *Torrid Zone* "On

the 14th of September, the voyagers were rejoiced by the sight of what they considered harbingers of land *A héron*, and a tropical bird called the *Rabo de junco* (the water-wagtail) neither of which are supposed to venture far to sea, hovered about the ships." *Wont*,—accustomed *Meteor*,—a shooting star. *Which made them very sad*,—which cast a gloom over their minds, as being regarded by them as a prognostic of some coming evil. Meteors or shooting stars are considered by the superstitious as bad omens, hence the national flag of England has been compared by Campbell to a meteor, as striking terror into the hearts of the enemy —

"The meteor flag of England,  
Shall yet terrific burn  
Till danger's troubled night depart,  
And the star of peace return"

*Ye Mariners of England.*

*Sea-weeds*,—marine plants. *The Mar de Sargasso*,—the sea of *Sargassum* or weed. "In the centre of each of these areas of circulation (*viz* the current of sea-water, *e. g.*, Gulf stream, &c,) where, owing to the comparative immovability of the waters, *marine plants* and *floating sea-weeds* are developed with a prodigious fecundity, so as to form enormous marine meadows, which are named by sea-men *Sargasso seas*, from the Spanish word *Sargazo*, "weed"—*A Mangin's "Mysteries of the Ocean"* *Submerged*,—sunken, inundated *Took heart*,—took courage, plucked courage *Are in good spirits*,—are of good cheers, are cheerful

**Page 87.** *The needle declines*,—the magnetic needle of the compass points *A whole point of the compass*,—the whole distance between two points of the compass. A point of the compass, (or rather the distance between two points), being  $\frac{1}{32}$  of the circle, is equal to  $11^{\circ} 15'$  (*Read notes The E. N. E. Text, P 117*) *Sink*,—begin to vanish *To murmur teeth*,—to grumble and complain out of extreme anguish and discomfiture

*Whether another world*,—"It (the variation) soon attracted the attention of the pilots and filled them with consternation. It seemed as if the very laws of nature were changing as they advanced, and that they were entering another world subject to unknown influences"—*Irving*

*A theory*,—an explanation of his own *That time*,—when very little advance in science was made. *To account for*,—to give reasons for.

*It was caused...round the pole*,—"He observed that the direction of the needle was not to the polar star, but to some fixed and invisible point. The variation, therefore, was not caused by any fallacy in the compass, but by the movement of the north star itself, which like the other heavenly bodies, had its changes and revolutions, and every day described a circle round the pole.—The high opinion which the pilots entertained of Columbus as a profound astronomer gave weight to this theory and the alarm subsided.—*Irving*.

*Quieted*,—silenced. *Upon this head*,—On this score; regarding this point. *Pelican*,—A palmped water fowl of the genus *Pelicanus*. It is larger than the swan, and remarkable for its enormous bill, to the lower edges of the under chop of which is attached a pouch or bag, capable of being distended so as to hold many quarts of water. In this pouch the fowl deposits the fish it takes for food. Hence the prevalent notion that pelicans feed their young with their blood. *Drizzling rain*,—rain falling in small drops. *Proximity*,—immediate nearness. *Will not beat for land*,—will not grope about in the dark, as it were, in search of land, will not blindly steer the course of his vessel this way and that way. *That the land give token of*,—the land which is indicated by these various appearances of nature, viz, clouds, drizzling-rain unaccompanied by wind, &c

**Page 88** *As indeed to be*,—which this land, indicated by these natural appearances, really turned out to be. *Press on to*,—Steadily advance in the direction of. *Scientific basis*,—sound foundation upon reasonable grounds, supported by science. *He was not to be success*,—he was determined not to swerve or deviate an inch from the pursuit of his principal aim, viz, of discovering the mainland of the Indies, although he was tempted to do so, by the prospect of partial success, viz, of discovering "islands lying to the north or to the south." *His men*,—his subordinates, the crews of the vessels. *Their best plan*,—the best method they could adopt in getting rid of Columbus. *Unfortunately*,—by an ill luck, accidentally. *Absorbed*,—Wrapped or engrossed

*Some of whom ..at the stars*—"All agreed that Columbus should be compelled by force to adopt a measure on which their common safety depended. Some of the more audacious proposed, as the most expeditious and certain method for getting rid at once of his remonstrances, to throw him into the sea, being persuaded that, upon their return to Spain, the death of an unsuccessful projector would excite little concern and be inquired into with no curiosity."—*Robertson*

*Needful*,—necessary, favourable, because of its supporting Columbus's object and not that of the crew. *Contrary wind*,—wind blowing from the east,—“A soft steady breeze from the east filled every sail”—*Irving*.

(*N. B.*—This steady east wind favoured Columbus's intention of pressing on to the west in quest of land, and it is for this only that the mutinous crew could not sail back to the east, inspite of their earnest desire for it) *Tormented*,—distressed, agitated.

*No wind .Spain*,—no west wind that might be favourable to the fulfilment of their design of sailing back for Spain, against the wishes of Columbus. *On they go*,—They continue to steer towards the west. *Grass*,—sea-weeds. *They are all convinced .no land*,—they firmly believe that they see land at a distance; and so out of gratitude to God sing a Latin hymn which begins,—“*Gloria in excelsis Deo*”—(Glory to God in the highest) and even the admiral himself, who was determined to stick to his own plan, deviates from his course towards due west and makes for this land, which was afterwards found to be no land, but only an illusion (caused by a cloud).

**Page 89** *Discourse*,—speech or conversation on some serious subject. *Oration*,—(L Oro, I speak) speech, *Endings*,—conclusions. *Grim despair*,—utter hopelessness. **They are like men .another form of beginning.**—the companions of Columbus while pursuing, with eagerness, “the phantoms of hope,” and searching after the realisation of “the fleeting goad that mocked them with the view,” werelike men who have to hear, against their will, the disgusting address of a speaker, and who consequently expect to find the oration brought to a close, at every natural pause or break of a sentence, but finding the speaker resume the thread of his discourse, get so hopelessly puzzled and

disconcerted, that they become unable even to comprehend the meaning of words and images employed by the speaker in course of his address *Stout hearted*,—bold or fearless **These mariners were land that neared not**,—to speak the truth, these sailors were sufficiently undaunted, but the attempt itself of undertaking such an enterprise in an unknown and unlimited, wide waste of waters,—an attempt that was so long attended with so little success, and that every day held out to them, and deceived them with, a vain and unrealised prospect of land ahead,—was no doubt an extremely bold and hazardous one The idea reminds one of the well-known lines of Goldsmith —

“Impelled, with steps unceasing, to pursue,  
Some feeling good that mocks me with the view,  
That, like the circle bounding earth and skies,  
Allures from far yet, as I follow, flies — *Travelle!*”

The quotation in the text comes from Rogers —

“Yet who but He undaunted could explore,  
A world of waves, a sea without a shore,  
Trackless and vast and wild as that revealed  
When round the Ark the birds of tempest wheeled.

*Did not bring them*,—did not cherish in their hearts any noble idea that might keep up their spirits from utter dejection *Already done enough*,—viz, by venturing so far in an unknown sea. *To furnish lives*,—to provide them with many a topic of conversation out of these personal adventures, for the cheerful firesides of their respective homes, during many future evenings of their lives *Suffer*,—allow

**Page 90.** *Detention*,—Delay, restraint *Stop*,—halt *Want of mind*,—want of firm determination, vacillation *In any order*,—under any discipline *Who knew Columbus well*,—because he was an intimate acquaintance of Columbus *These perilous days*,—these hazardous days which preceded the discovery, and during which Columbus was exposed to a serious danger, viz, that of losing life *Dealing with*,—managing *Refractory*,—(L *Re* and *Frango*; \I break) Breaking through all limits of discipline, mutinous *Contrived to win them onwards*,—managed to gain them over gradually in such a way as they were at last

induced to consent to continue the voyage onwards for some time more *Now soothing.* words,—at one time pacifying their roused feelings by using a kind and condescending language *Carrying their minds*,—diverting their attention. *Spreading out*,—holding out *Large hopes*,—Hopes of substantial benefits *Their princes*,—their *sovereigns*, *i. e.*, Ferdinand and Isabella *Aught*,—anything *Untutored*,—uncultured; unschooled, untrained *With mocking hopes*,—with false presentment of hopes bringing on disappointment *Not knowing* . . . to him,—being completely in the dark as to what would happen to him or what was in store for him day after day *On went*,—Advanced forward steadily *Undubitable*,—certain, infallible *Table-board*,—a piece of plank used upon a table *Haw-tree*,—haw-thorn, *i. e.*, hedge-thorn

**Page 91** *The same weary* .see beyond,—the same monotonous curved expanse of waters that lay before them, and to see beyond which, for a very long time, their eyes were much strained and fatigued. *Poop*,—primarily, the stern of a ship, now, the highest and aftmost deck of a ship reaching forward to the mizzen-mast *Groom*, &c, . *chamber*,—‘Gentleman of the king’s bed-chamber’ *Rodrigo Sanchez* .*overlooker*,—“Rodrigo Sanchez of Segovia was Inspector-general of the armament.” *Overlooker*,—one who looks over or superintends all affairs, “Inspector-general” *Hum*,—Rodrigo Sanchez *A cold and cautious man*,—an indifferent and over-cautious man,—not possessing an ardent temperament like that of Columbus *Jealous states* *great generals*,—some governments to accompany their powerful generals at the head of a large army, in order to watch and check, their ambitious movements of which they (*i. e.* the governments) are jealously apprehensive. *And who are by them*,—such ‘cold and cautious’ men are not much liked by the generals, on account of their over-cautious, and interfering nature. *Sanchez did not where it could be seen*,—“By the time the latter (Sanchez) had ascended the round-house in the poop (where Columbus was standing), the light had disappeared.”—*Irving*.



To have been officially,—to have been taken notice of formally by a state officer *That went*,—that was borne. *And so it proved*,—and so it actually turned out to be, *i. e.* a light on land

**Page 92.** *Two o'clock in the morning*,—2 A. M., *N. B.*—"Morning" or "A. M." commences after midnight (*i. e.* 12 o'clock)

*Land was first discovered by Rodrigo de Triana*—"They continued their course until two in the morning, when a gun from the Pinta gave the joyful signal of land. It was first descried by a mariner named Rodrigo de Triana, but the reward was afterwards adjudged to the admiral, for having previously perceived the light"—*Irring*.

*They tell a story*,—a story is commonly said, a rumour runs (*N B*—This *They* is not a Demonstrative, but an Indefinite Pronoun, = people) *In sadness and despite*,—out of utter disappointment and disgust. *Adjudged*,—decreed. **It was charged, somewhat**

**Seville**—This pension was to have been realised, as if by a mysterious coincidence, from the proceeds of the meat-market of the great Moorish town, Seville. The reward of a man (*viz.* Columbus) who introduced the light of Christianity into a new continent, came, as if by a mysterious working of Providence, from a town (*viz.* Seville) which belonged to the infidels (Moors) and afterwards taken by the Christians. *Shambles*,—the place where butcher's meat is sold; a flesh-market

**Seville**—A famous city of Spain, formerly capital of the ancient kingdom, and now of the modern province of the same name, stands on the left bank of the Guadalquivir. Held by the Moors for five centuries, and entirely rebuilt by them from the materials of former Roman edifices, Seville was long a purely Moorish city. It rose to its climax of prosperity after the discovery of the New World, when it became the residence of princely merchants and the mart of the colonies. From 1248 to the removal of the court to Valladolid in the reign of Charles V., Seville was the capital of Spain

**He saw the light darkness people**,—In the island enveloped in darkness he saw the light which was being borne up and down, and which symbolised the religious or spiritual enlightenment that was diffused among

the savages of the land, whose hearts were completely dark or devoid of spirituality. **Light in the midst of darkness**,—Apart from the literal sense of the phrase, there is an allegorical one, *viz.*—Religious or spiritual enlightenment amongst the uncultured and barbarous people, who had not been graced even with a distant glimpse of the light of truth and religion. The idea is an echo of the following Biblical passages—"And the light shineth in darkness, but darkness comprehendeth it not. That was the true Light which lighteth every man that cometh into the world. He was in the world and the world was made by him, and the world knew him not. He came unto his own and his own received him not—*John, I. 6, 8—11.* And thus is the condemnation that light is come into the world and men loved darkness rather than light, because their deeds were evil."—*John III. 19.* Barbarous people,—the barbarians or savages, (originally, all non-Hellenic people were called *Barbarians*, *i. e.*, all those nations of the then known world who were not Greeks; hence, uncivilised people) *God permitting*,—God willing,—(D. V.) *Deo volente* So that the princes..... Catholic faith, —so that just after the conclusion of the war against the Moors, which was considered a holy war, another opportunity of diffusing the light of the all-embracing faith, *viz.* Christianity amongst the unbelievers, presented itself, and thus the chain of the great evangelical work was kept up without any break, under the auspices of the princes of Castille and Leon. *These last words*,—*viz.* those about the obtaining of a fresh opportunity of continuing evangelical work amongst the infidels *Made use of*,—employed, used. *The crowning event of his life*,—the most important incident of his life, *viz.* the discovery of the New World. *Preface*,—preamble; introduction. *At large*,—in general

**Page 93.** *The royal banners . . . . Alhambra*,—the national flag of Spain which was placed upon the high and stately domes of the great palace of the Moors, the *Alhambra* or the *Red Castle*

The *Alhambra*—is the name given to the fortress which forms a sort of acropolis or citadel to the city of Granada, and

in which stood the palace of the ancient Moorish kings of Granada. The name is a corruption of an Arabic word which signifies—the *Red-Castle*. The lightness and elegance of the columns and arches, and the richness of the ornamentation are unsurpassed, and the colouring is but little altered by time.

*The Grand Khan*,—i. e. Khan of Khans, i. e. Kublai Khan of Cathay (See Notes on Page, 55) Who had sent . . . *faith*, Marco Polo was commissioned by Kublai Khan to carry a letter to the Pope, in which he asked that a hundred learned men might be sent into his dominions. *In the faith*,—i. e., in Christianity *The Holy Father*,—the Pope. *Great towns were idolatry*,—large and populous cities in the East are being spiritually lost or fallen, on account of the belief of their inhabitants in idol-worship, just as Sodom, and Gomorrah had been destroyed by God with fire and brim-stone. *Receiving. sects of perdition*,—Imbibing doctrines fit only to lead men to eternal damnation, entertaining among them persons holding doctrines that might lead them only to hell. *Lovers and furtherers*,—admirers and promoters. *The sect of Mahomet*.—Mohammedanism. *Mahomet*,—The Prophet of the Islam. When he preached his new religion, he was persecuted, and was forced to quit Mecca, and seek refuge at Medina. The Mahommadans adopt this as their chronological standard, calling the *Hegira*, i. e., the *Flight*, the first day of July, 622 A. D. He was poisoned by a Jewess, of the effects of which he died in 632, A. D. *Heresy*,—error of opinion respecting some fundamental doctrine of religion, a religious opinion which differs from that of the established church. *Way that should be taken*,—means that should be adopted. *The expulsion of the Jews*,—the driving away of the Jews from Spain, for their holding doctrines opposed to those of Christianity. *Jew*,—(a contraction of Judas or Judah) An Israelite.

**Page 94.** *As occurring at the same* he received,—as taking place simultaneously with his receiving, viz,—in the same month of January, 1492. *The two transactions*,—the two events, viz, the expulsion of the Jews and the discovery of the new world. *Devout intentions*,—religious or pious motives. *The document*,—the record, viz, his diary. *Perfect good faith*,—perfect

sincerity and honesty *About her motives,—about the sincerity of her motives Lamentably unjust things,—unjust matters which were highly deplorable; e g the expulsion of the Jews, the establishment of the Inquisition, &c She had what to act as she did,—she was compelled, so to speak to act as she actually did, by some reason, which appeared to her judgment, to be too imperative to be put by [She was not naturally capable of tyranny, but it was represented to her that the Jews should be expelled from her dominions, because, they were the enemies of Christianity, and as she was devout, and had implicit faith in the opinions of her confessors, and other clergymen, she was easily led away to act in a way unworthy of her genial and benign disposition, and to consent to these glaring acts of injustice ]*

**Page 95.** *Any great personage,—any person really noble, like Isabella Authority,—sanction So much that motives,—so many acts that are singularly bad and unjust,—all of which being accomplished, or rather, approved of, from the sincerest and noblest of motives.*

**The expulsion of the Jews**—The envy roused by the flourishing condition of the Jews, combined with the high religious excitement, kindled in the long war with the infidel, directed the terrible arm of the Inquisition against this unfortunate people. The popular odium inflamed by the discontent of the clergy at the resistance which they encountered in the work of proselytism, gradually grew stronger and stronger against the unhappy Israelites. Various offences, like the following, were urged against the Jews with great pertinacity by their enemies —

- (1). Christian children were said to be kidnapped in order to be crucified in derision of the Saviour
- (2). Physicians and apothecaries, whose science was particularly cultivated by the Jews, in the middle ages, were accused of poisoning their Christian patients
- (3). They were charged with the more probable offence of attempting to convert to their own faith the *ancient Christians*, as well as to reclaim such of their own race as had recently embraced Christianity

The sovereigns were importuned to adopt a more rigorous policy. The Inquisitors, in particular, to whom the work of conversion had been specially intrusted, represented the incompetence of all lenient

measures to the end proposed. The Jews resorted to their usual crafty policy of propitiating the sovereigns by offering to tender a donative of thirty thousand ducats towards defraying the expenses of the Moorish war. The negotiation however, was suddenly interrupted by the Inquisitor-General, Torquemada, who burst into the apartment of the palace where the sovereigns were giving audience to the Jewish deputy, and drawing forth a crucifix from beneath his mantle, held it up, exclaiming—"Judas Iscariot sold his master for thirty pieces of silver. Your Highnesses would sell him anew for thirty thousand, here he is, take him and barter him away." So saying the frantic priest threw the crucifix on the table and left the apartment. The sovereigns were overawed by it. The extreme injustice and cruelty of the proposed measure of banishing every unbaptised Israelite from the land rendered it specially repugnant to the naturally humane disposition of the queen, But she had been early schooled to distrust her own reason, and indeed the natural suggestions of humanity, in cases of conscience. Without opposing further resistance to the representations so emphatically expressed, of the holy persons, in whom she most confided, Isabella at length silenced her own scruples, and consented to the fatal measure of proscription.

The Edict for the Expulsion of the Jews was signed by the Spanish sovereigns at Granada, March 30th, 1492. It decreed that all unbaptised Jews, of whatever sex, age, or condition, should depart from the realm by the end of July next ensuing, prohibiting them from revisiting it, on any pretext whatever, under penalty of death, and confiscation of property. They were allowed to dispose of their effects of every kind, on their own account, and to carry the proceeds along with them, in bills of exchange, or merchandise not prohibited, but neither in gold nor silver.

The doom of exile fell like a thunder-bolt on the heads of the Israelites. The old ties were now severed at a blow. They were to go forth as exiles from the land of their birth, the land where all whom they ever loved had lived or died, the land not so much of their adoption as of inheritance, which had been the home of their ancestors for centuries, and with whose prosperity and glory they were of course as intimately associated as was any ancient Spaniard. They were to be cast out helpless and defenceless, with a brand of infamy set on them, among nations who had always held them in derision and hatred.—*Adapted from Prescott*

The treatment of the Moorish converts—Cardinal Ximenes contrived somehow or other to convert a large number of the

**Moors to Christianity** There was a terrible rising of the Moors in Granada, on account of an excessive zeal of the Cardinal for the work of conversion. It was, however, soon put down, but the sovereigns were importuned to adopt stricter measures for their complete reclamation and to offer pardon to them on the alternatives of conversion or exile. In the course of an investigation into the cause of the disturbances, *many of the principal citizens of Granada were imprisoned on suspicion*; the greater part made their peace by embracing Christianity, many others sold *their estates and migrated to Barbary*; and the remainder of the population, *whether from fear of punishment or contagion of example, consented to receive baptism*. But the obstinate Moors broke out into several other insurrections, which were very terrible in character, and eventually the power of the Moors was greatly humbled. Tranquillity was now restored throughout the wide borders of Granada. The banner of the cross floated triumphantly over the whole extent of its wild sierras, its broad valleys, and populous cities. Every Moor, in exterior at least, had become a Christian, every mosque had been converted into a Christian church. Still the country was not entirely purified from the stain of Islamism, since many professing their ancient faith were scattered over different parts of the kingdom of Castile. To obviate this an ordinance was published in 1501, prohibiting all intercourse between these Moors and the orthodox kingdom of Granada, and at last an edict, offering the Moors the alternative of baptism or exile, was issued from Seville, February 12, 1502. After a preamble duly setting forth the numerous backslidings occasioned among the new converts by their intercourse with their unbaptised brethren, the act goes on to state, that *all the unbaptised Moors in the kingdom of Castile and Leon above 14 years of age if males and 12 if females, must leave the country by the end of April following*—Adapted from Prescott

**The Inquisition** Its early history—In some Roman Catholic countries, a court or tribunal established for the examination and punishment of heretics. Previous to Constantine (A. D. 306) heresy and spiritual offences were punished by excommunication only, but shortly after his death capital punishments were added, and Inquisitors were appointed by Theodosius, A. D. 382. Justinian decreed the doctrines of the four holy synods as the holy scriptures and their canons to be observed as laws, 529, hence the penal code against heretics. About 800 the power of the western bishops was enlarged, and courts were established for trying and punishing spiritual offenders, even with death. In the 12th century many heresies arose, and Gregory IX, in 1233, established by

rules the inquisitorial missions, sent out by Innocent III some years previously, and committed them into the hands of the Dominicans.

The establishment of the Inquisition in Spain — Having fallen into disuse in Spain in the 15th century, the holy office was reinstated by Ferdinand and Isabella in 1480 *In 1481, nearly 3,000 persons were burnt in Andalusia, and 17,000 suffered other penalties* The "instructions" of the new tribunal were promulgated, November 29th, 1484. New articles were added in 1488, and 1498, and finally a new series of ordinances in 81 articles were compiled by the Inquisitor-General Valdez in 1561

Prescott writes — "It is remarkable that a scheme so monstrous as that of the Inquisition, presenting the most effectual barrier, probably that was ever opposed to the progress of knowledge, should have been revived at the close of the 15th century, when the light of civilization was rapidly advancing over every part of Europe It is more remarkable, that it should have occurred in Spain, at this time, under a government which had displayed great religious independence on more than one occasion and which had paid uniform regard to the rights of its subjects, and pursued a generous policy in reference to their intellectual culture Providence, however, permitted that the sufferings, heaped on the heads of the unfortunate Jews should be requited in full measure to the nation that inflicted them The fires of the Inquisition, which were lighted exclusively for the Jews, were destined eventually to consume their oppressors"

*Methinks*,—It appears to me *Majestic*,—dignified *Honest*,—expressive of sincerity *Loving eye*,—cf "The meek intelligence of those dear eyes" *Cowper* *As it looks beholder*,—as the face (*viz* of the likeness of the queen) seems to be looking downwards upon the spectator, (the picture being placed on high) *Chapel*,—place of worship.

**A countenance the next thing to it**—A face which was so full of a vivid expression of human feelings, and so strikingly singular, that it could not be like that of an angel, as represented by painters, although her face was not exactly like that of an angel, yet it was not far inferior to it, if not quite angelic, her face made the highest possible approach to it *Reproachfully*,—disapprovingly **Conscious sadness**—A secret feeling of melancholy caused obviously by her inward disapprobation of her outward acts,

of which she was fully conscious and which she suffered to be silenced in her breast in obedience to what appeared to her to have been a higher mandate *In her defence*,—by way of justifying her public acts, which were, in fact, so atrociously inhuman. *Could we interrogate her*,—if it were at all possible for us to ask her directly as to the motive of her acts. **That she obeyed . its inter-**

**preters**—That she acted in accordance with what appeared to her to have been the dictate of Providence, and as she could not safely trust her own feeble judgment in the matter of distinguishing the real divine dictate from the fictitious, she depended, for a true interpretation of the same, upon the judgment of those whom she considered the best, the most pious, and so the least unerring of men living in her time, *viz*, the clergy. **Oh! that she**

**, ..town or fortress**—Oh! it would have been far better for humanity, if she would only have insisted a little upon adhering to the voice of God as it actually presented itself to the inmost recesses of her own generous and humane heart, and not to the interpretation thereof as given by her ghostly advisers when she was in the habit of earnestly advocating, with tender feelings of sympathy characteristic of woman-kind, the cause of the unfortunate and the distressed, like the pent-up garrison or the inhabitants of some town or fortress, closely besieged by the Spaniards, and at last compelled by them to surrender, and throw themselves at the mercy of the besiegers. *Intercede*, plead *Cooped-up*,—shut or pent up

**Page 96.** *Beleagured*,—Besieged, invested *But at least .blessings on her*,—but at least the unfortunate American Indians, if not such other people as the Jews or the Moors, had no cause of complaint against her, but were rather gently treated so long as Isabella was living and was at the helm of affairs, and for all her kind offices, the poor Indians can do nothing but cherish her memory and pray for her departed soul

**He might have its history**,—Had she been living for some time longer, slavery would not have become



so painful, so crushing and so ruinous to the poor Indians, and they would not have required the philanthropic services of their great "**Protector**," **Las Casas**, in later years, in order to mitigate their sufferings, at least to a certain extent. The "**Protector**" of the Indians — Las Casas crossed the Atlantic, saw Cardinal Ximenes, and represented the grievances of the Indians, was appointed to go out and inquire into the wrongs of the unfortunate people thus complained of together with the Jeronimite Fathers, and was appointed "*Protector of the Indians.*" Helps, in his *Life of Las Casas*, writes :—

"Las Casas was by a *cedula* formally appointed to advise and inform the Jeronimite Fathers, to be in correspondence with the Government, and generally to take such steps in the matter as might be for the service of God and their Highnesses. All authorities were to abet him in the same. He was also named "**Protector of the Indians**," with a salary of a hundred *pesos* of gold, which, he himself observes, "was then not little, as that hell of Peru had not been discovered, which, with its multitude of *quintals* of gold, has impoverished and destroyed Spain." These are remarkable words for that time"—*Chap. III P 47.*

*A ceremonial . occasion*,—A formal rite which was quite in keeping with the grandeur of the incident *Greeted*,—received, welcomed *The level shores of the small island*,—"As the day dawned, he saw before him a level island, several leagues in extent, and covered with trees like a continual orchard"—*W. Irving Fruitful*,—fertile, luxuriant in vegetation *Verdant*,—green *The other captains respective crowns*,—"Whilst Martin Alonzo Pinzon and Vincent Yanez his brother, put off in company in their boats, each with a banner of the enterprise emblazoned with a green cross, having on either side the letters *F.* and *Y.*, the initials of the Castilian monarchs Fernando and Ysabel, surmounted by crowns" *Depicted*,—painted *Initials*,—first letters of the names.

**Page 97.** *Surmounted*,—placed over *Device*, emblem; design *Devotion*,—ardent attachment *Retinue*,—body of followers *Innocent amazement*,—wonder proceeding from their simplicity *Fell upon their knees*,—knelt down *And with tears*,—tears . *God*,—offered up their heart-felt thanks-givings to the all-powerful God, with

tears of that profoundest kind of which the cause men cannot ascertain Tears proceeding from an excess of emotion gather to the eyes, without the knowledge of the man as to their cause, and as such, are too deep for an easy comprehension.

*Cf* Tennyson —

"Tears, idle tears, I do not know what they mean,  
Tears from the depth of some divine despair,  
Rise in the heart and gather to the eye . ." *Princess*

*Embassage*,—persons entrusted with a solemn message *The least surprised* saw,—of all the persons, the least struck with wonder, by all that he saw *Was the most affected*,—was the only man, of the whole lot, whose heart was touched or moved in the highest degree with a deep and tender emotion at the realisation of his long-cherished hopes *Thus it is*,—it so ordinarily happens in this world *Is never fully appreciated*,—is never set an adequate value on, is never prized or valued to its fullest extent *The designer*,—the man who has entertained the idea of the plan or scheme *Apparently accomplished*,—almost performed or finished *Apt*,—likely. *To look back*,—to review. *Shuddering awe*,—trembling surprise *Audacity*,—presumption, or over-boldness *For thus it is that mankind*,—Helps in his *Essay on Self-discipline* writes about the feeling that accompanies the performance of an arduous task, *viz*, the checking of a bad habit or evil disposition .—

"But surely when a man has got the better of any bad habit or evil disposition, his sensations should not be those of exultation only, ought they not rather to be akin to the *shuddering faintness* with which he would survey a chasm that he had been guided to avoid, or with which he would recall to mind a dubious deadly struggle which had terminated in his favour?"

*The vast resolve*,—the noble resolution. *Sustained such a man*,—kept up the spirits of the man with the "vast resolve." *Throughout enterprise*,—under all unfavourable experiences during his long and arduous undertaking. *Having for at the heart*,—having, at the time of the fruition of the scheme, no opposition whatever to encounter and contend against, ("the vast resolve") wears off, bringing about a sudden depression of feelings in the heart.

**Page 98. And thus the greatest .....melancholy,**—Great undertakings, in their first stages, involve a series of 'dubious deadly struggle' and opposition, and success in them implies the eventual removal of all these difficulties, followed by a consequent depression of the heart, on account of the great stimulus caused by opposition being taken away from it. Thus from high-strung nerves, there sets in a strong re-action towards dejection, and so success in great undertakings instead of producing an elation of spirits, gives rise to the opposite feeling of an indescribable kind of staggering melancholy and "shuddering faintness"—**New difficulties endeavours,**—There being no such thing as un-mixed good or an unalloyed perfection in this world, fresh difficulties and obstacles arise from what we term *success*, and ignite by friction, as it were, fresh sparks of energies in the heart of the discoverer or the successful designer, and thus equip his mind once more with a resolute hardihood so as to make him fit for encountering fresh discomfitures and for making renewed efforts for successfully getting them over. *Columbus will not difficulties,*—in the lot of Columbus difficulties of both these two classes, were not wanting,—difficulties encountered before the attainment of success, and those bred from success itself. *Whose occasional of the night,*—whose casual depression of spirits must have made Columbus most anxious and restless, and consequently sleepless and watchful, throughout the hours of night. *Watches of the night,*—portions of the night occupied, while on duty, by each part of the ship's crew alternately. *Weary eyelids,*—heavy eyelids of the exhausted man. *Their greatly-enduring leader,*—their leader who had successfully and patiently encountered a good deal of suffering.

*They sought .. assurances of fidelity*—"They threw themselves at the feet of Columbus with feelings of self-condemnation mingled with reverence. They implored him to pardon their ignorance, incredulity and insolence, which had created him so much unnecessary disquiet, and had so often obstructed the prosecution of his well-concerted plan, and passing in the warmth of their admiration, from one extreme to another, they now pronounced the

man, whom they had so lately reviled and threatened, to be a person inspired by Heaven with sagacity and fortitude more than human, in order to accomplish a design so far beyond the ideas and conception of all former ages — *Robertson*

*Subdued for. ...success*,—being overpowered for the time being, with a feeling of awe at his grandeur and loftiness, now backed and verified by success *In loving terms*,—employing a language bespeaking their affection. *Assurances of fidelity*,—promises of their faithful adherence or obedience to him in future *The placable Columbus* . . . *character*,—Columbus, who was always disposed to “forget and forgive,” accepted these greetings, congratulations, kind expressions of gratitude, and assurances of faithfulness of his companions with all the ardour and softness of feelings, that were characteristic of his noble and loving nature *Due legal formalities*,—usual ceremonies of the law.

**Page 99.** *Forthwith*,—immediately *The gravity of the proceeding*,—the solemnity of the ceremonies. *Must have ...islanders*,—must have struck the dwellers of the island, who stood by, with wonder. *Their whiteness, &c.*, the whiteness of their complexion. Note that the American Indians are a copper-coloured race and possess scanty hair, so the whiteness of the complexion and the profusion of hair and beard of the Europeans were quite different from their own. *Cf. Irving*,—“Their complexion was of a tawny or copper hue, and they were entirely destitute of beard.” *Crimson*,—deep red, (from Arabic, *kirmizi*, Sanskrit *krimi*, an insect which produces the dye.) *Scarf*,—a piece of dress that hangs loose upon the shoulders. *Radiant*,—flushed, elated, animated. *Worthy of*,—equal in value to. *Was their mind.. ..Christians?*—were they not human beings only in outward features, and did they possess any soul to the needs of which they might administer by becoming good Christians? *The Greatest*,—viz, Columbus. *Let him .. himself*, let us quote from his own writings in reply to this query. *That would deliver .. force*,—that would resign themselves more easily and with greater grace than other nations, to Christianity, and would accept this faith

more by reason of genuine love for it than through compulsion.

**Page 100.** *Strings of glass beads*,—perforated glass globules strung on thread (generally used in saying prayers or for ornamental purpose) *Were so entuely* to see,—were so completely attached to us that it was a matter of great wonder *For*,—in exchange for *With good will*,—gladly, cheerfully, (without murmur) *Poor in every-thing*,—ill-provided with the necessaries of life *Goes on to say*,—continues saying *Were well made*,—their features were well formed *Yellow*,—or rather, tawny *Nor understood such things*,—nor knew the use of weapons *Darts*,—arrows *Fish's tooth at the end*,—instead of iron, fish's tooth was attached to the end of their darts, in order to make them pointed Note that the use of metals was unknown to them, as also to other nations during the primitive ages of civilization *Make*,—(intransitive) Be, prove

**Page 101** *Domestic*,—familiarily attached to us *Tractable*,—manageable, governable *In their way of reckoning*,—while making calculations *The Rio de Mares*,—*Rio de los Mares*, the name given to a large river, now called *Savannah la Mor*,—or *Nuevitas del Principe*, in Cuba *Reconnoitre*,—to survey, to examine *Word*,—news, information. *Pavilions*,—(L *Papilionis*, a butterfly) tents, (originally so named from their painted and extended covering resembling the wings of a butterfly when flying) *Well wrought*,—artistically wrought (worked) *The beautiful*,—beauty (in general)

**Page 102.** *Fish-hooks*,—pieces of iron or other metal bent into curves, for catching fish. *Fishing tackle*,—ropes used for fishing. *Mermard*,—(sea-maid)—a supposed sea-animal, said to resemble a woman in the upper parts of the body, and a fish in the lower part *The Rio del Sol*,—a river at the north eastern part of Cuba *Marien*,—a province of Hispaniola *In terms* . *giving*,—in a language which might remind his readers of the doctrines held by the Christians about giving (alms)

Doctrines maintained . *giving*,—The Christian doctrines about charity or giving alms are embodied in the following texts of

the Gospel—"Therefore when thou doest thine alms, do not sound a trumpet before thee . But when thou doest alms, let not thy left hand know what thy right hand doeth . That thy alms may be in secret , and thy Father which seeth in secret Himself shall reward thee openly."—*St. Matthew—VI 2, 3, 4.*

*Point,—stage. A new product,—viz , tobacco. Unfair-  
ing,—inexhaustible.*

*To a large section of mankind—*The use of tobacco increased, and has continued to increase to the present day, when it is more prevalent than at any former time, the luxury of rich and poor, of civilised nations and of savage tribes . Although it did not become prevalent in the east till the 17th century, the Turks and Persians are now the greatest smokers in the world , in India, all classes, and both sexes smoke , in China, the practice—perhaps there more ancient—is universal, and girls from the age of eight or nine, wear, as an appendage to their dress, a small silken pocket to hold tobacco and a pipe"—*Encyclopædia.*

*Commodities of revenue,—*articles of trade producing revenue. *The great financial resource,—*the most lucrative source of producing government revenues

"Tobacco is subject to a higher rate of duty in proportion to its intrinsic value than any other article —The value of the best sorts in the leaf only ranges from 3*d.* to 9*d.* per pound , whilst the duty is as follows —Unmanufactured, containing 10 per cent or more of natural moisture, 3*s.* per pound , and if containing less than 10 per cent of moisture, 3*s.* 6*d.* per pound . The various kinds of manufactured tobacco range from 4*s.* 4*d.* to 5*s.* 4*d.* per pound

"The revenue derived from the import of tobacco into Great Britain is very large ..The gross amount of revenue collected by the Custom House, for tobacco and snuff, in 1876-77, after deducting repayments and drawbacks, was £7,775,575 . The revenue from this article has, upon the whole, kept steadily increasing for a considerable number of years . It had prior to that, been greatly affected by the civil war in America"—*Encyclopædia.*

*Indirect taxation,—*Levying of a tax or duty on articles of consumption as an excise, customs, &c

**Page 103.** *Nourished,—*kept up by supplying funds  
*Revolution,—*complete overthrow of some existing social and political institutions *Hebrew,—*the language of the

Israelites *Chaldee*,—the language of the Chaldeans. *Indulged in kind*,—were in the habit of smoking some strange substance. *In question*,—referred to. *Absorbed*,—imbibed. *Charred*,—reduced to coal by burning; carbonized. *Wrapped*,—covered all over. *This process of imbibing smoke*,—"they beheld several of the natives going about with fire-brands in their hands, and certain dried herbs which they rolled up in a leaf, and lighting one end, put the other in their mouths, and continued exhaling and puffing out the smoke. A roll of this kind they called a tobacco, a name since transferred to the plant of which the rolls were made"—*Irring*.

*Reproved*,—rebuked.

*It as a vice*.—"Tobacco was at first recommended for medicinal virtues which were greatly exaggerated, but soon became an article of luxury. The popes Urban VIII and Innocent XI fulminated against it the thunders of the church, the priests and Sultans of Turkey declared smoking a crime, Sultan Amuret IV. decreeing its punishment by the most cruel kinds of death. King James described its use as a custom loathsome to the eye, hateful to the nose, harmful to the brain, dangerous to the lungs, and in the black stinking fume thereof nearest resembling the horrible stygian smoke of the pit that is bottomless"—*The Encyclopædia*

*Leave it off*,—abandon or shun it. *Savour*,—good smell or flavour. *Several periods of his own life*,—this refers to the extreme difficulty and seeming hopelessness of Las Casas' philanthropic labours.

**Page 104** *Afforded him*. *comfort*,—given him, had he used it, a peculiar kind of ease and softening sensation. *However that may be*,—be that as it may. *Financially speaking*,—speaking from the point of revenue or commerce. *Productive*,—lucrative. *The excellent relations*,—the perfect friendly terms. *Resuming*. *history*,—to take up again the continuity of the narrative. *Met with*,—came across. *The slightest gift of prophecy*,—the power of foreseeing future events even in the least degree. *They would have sea*,—they would have consigned these trifles (*viz*, golden ornaments) to the deepest depth of the sea, so that no trace of them could be made (Because, gold became the root of evil,—all their misery and slavery)

**Page 105** *That he was now upon Khans*,—that he was traversing such lines as were sure to lead to the discovery of the long-expected personage Kublai Khan, the Grand Khan or Emperor of Cathay (as described by Marco Polo) *Ludicrous*,—laughable, absurd *Possessed*,—completely occupied or taken *His Cipango*,—Cipango (modern Japan) which he was so anxiously seeking for Mark, the taunt in the use of “his,” which implies foolishness on the part of Columbus *Slily*,—shrewdly, tauntingly. *Bent on discovery*,—Being disposed to make further discoveries *The terra firma* “his” India,—the firm land,—i. e., continent (as opposed to the islands already discovered) which was contiguous to the Indies and which he so anxiously tried to discover (Mark that Helps has imbibed the spirit of taunting from the expression of Herrera, and hence, the second use of “his” before India) *Coasted*,—sailed along the coast of

**Page 106.** *Felicitously*,—Happily, suitably, advantageously *Wilfully parted company from*,—became separated from Columbus purposely, and not accidentally *Covetousness*,—avarice, inordinate thirst after riches *Undutiful proceeding*,—insubordinate conduct *Insubordination*,—defiance of the authority of a superior *Which makes greater*,—which increases our wonder still more. *Betook himself to rest*,—took to rest, i. e., slept *Steersman*,—helmsman. *Contrary to orders*,—disobeying express command.

**Page 107.** *Drifted on to a shoal*,—was smoothly driven on to a sandbank or bar where the water of the sea was very shallow *Directly they touch*,—immediately they strike against land, or come into immediate contact with land “*They*,” i. e., the people on board the ship *Starts from his dream*,—is taken aback and recovers himself from his temporary fit of reverie—or brown-study. *Gives the alarm*,—gives the danger-signal **For the responsibility** . *sleep*,—a man who is entrusted with a serious charge, and who is to be held accountable for the manner of the discharge of his duty, can hardly enjoy a sound and peaceful sleep

Cf.,—“Uneasy lies the head that wears the crown.” Shakespeare.—*Henry V.*



*Watch*,—period of duty, viz, of keeping vigilance and protecting against danger *Hurries up*,—rises up in great haste *Lower*,—let down *Poop*,—primarily the stern of a ship, now, the highest and aftmost deck of a ship reaching forward to the mizzen-mast *Aster n*,—(adv) On the stern, at the hinder part of the ship *Sprang*,—plunged *Made off for*,—proceeded at once towards *Emergency*,—critical moment or juncture *As best he might*,—to the best of his power. *Moved to tears*,—so affected or touched as to shed tears. (Mark the distinction between *sympathy* and *assistance*, the one is *mental* and *passive*, the other *active* and *practical*)

**Page 108.** *Stood guard*,—kept watch *Comforting messages*,—words of sympathy and consolation *To make up for the loss*,—in order to make good or compensate the loss *Effects*,—property, goods **The wrecker's trade.** **St. Domingo.**—The guilty profession of stealing the goods accidentally thrown upon the sea-shore after a shipwreck, might be successfully practised in Cornwall, the greatest maritime county of the most civilised country of the world, viz, England, but this together with the other crimes associated with civilization, was not known to the uncivilized people of the most backward of lands (St Domingo) *Touched to the heart*,—affected to the quick, exceedingly moved *As well he might*,—for which (viz, being thus moved) he had very good reason *Docile*,—manageable *They love their neighbours*,—this is a Biblical teaching *Curious reflections*,—queer remarks or observations *Providential*,—proceeding from divine superintendence *True faith*, viz, —Christianity

**Page 109.** *Providence*,—(God) Heaven. *High motives*,—noble principles. *Influence*,—regulate or guide *Dealt with*,—treated *Makes up for*,—compensates the loss caused by *Dowry*,—property given to a daughter at her marriage *"Ugliness"*,—symbolises the hardships to be undergone in preaching Christianity, (as enumerated in the text) *With the timber* *"Maria"*,—out of the timber obtained from the fragments of the wreck of the ship called *Santa Maria*,—which Columbus himself commanded *La*

*Navidad*,—the nativity (Birth of Christ) *Christmas-day*,—the birth-day of Christ, (the 25th December). *Most advantageously*,—to his greatest profit *Content*,—satisfied. *His grand secret*,—viz, that of the discovery of the new world *Mischance*,—Unfavourable circumstance

**Page 110.** *In trust to*,—in charge of *Commended to the good offices*,—committed to the friendly care or charge *Good offices*,—kindnesses *To do no violence to*,—not to outrage. *Conformable to*,—suited to or harmonious with.

## CHAPTER V

**Page 111.** *Homeward bound*,—ready to set out for home *Bound*,—(Icl bua, to make ready) ready to set out, intending to go *N B*—This 'bound' (adj) is to be distinguished from *bound* (pret. and pp of bind (v), which is derived from Sax. *bindan*, to bind, bend, &c) **Stood to** (a nautical term)—directed the course of the vessel towards **Head-wind**,—A wind that blows in a direction opposite to the ship's course **Doubling**,—Passing round **Look-out**,—A careful looking or watching for any object or event *Mast-head*,—the top or head of a mast *Which was worth voyagers*,—which was more precious than a favourable wind to those who had undertaken the voyage *Since*,—because *Consort*,—companion, hence, another ship *The chance of the . of a single ship*,—it was considered imprudent and unsafe to depend upon the fate of a single ship for the safe communication of the happy news of successfully discovering land on the other side of the Atlantic to the Europeans, who were still left in the dark about the matter. *Detained*,—kept back *Hove in sight*,—appeared; made its appearance again *Hove*,—pret. of *heave* (to rise or appear)

**Page 112.** *To account for his desertion*,—to give an explanation of his sailing away from the squadron. *The accidental result of a storm*,—due to a storm which overtook his vessel by chance *Which had driven . his leader*,—which had made him deviate from the course he was pursuing and so far away from the ken of the admiral's observa-

tion or look-out *Accepted this explanation*,—made a show of being satisfied with the explanation given. *Might cause a ..undertaking*,—might give rise to a revolt of the sailors which would be ruinous to the interests of the expedition *Bad faith*,—insincerity, want of fidelity. *The fact was*,—the real cause of Pinzon's desertion was *Anticipate*,—forestall *El Dorado*,—land of gold *By barter*,—by exchanging one commodity for another *Appropriated*,—secured for himself *Refitting*,—equipping or repairing afresh

**Page 113** *Her consort*,—viz., the *Pinta* *Coasting*,—sailing along the coast of *Affray*,—scuffle *Aborigines*,—original inhabitants, natives *Good understanding*,—friendly feeling *The scene of the encounter*,—the spot where the scuffle took place *Amicable agreement*,—friendly understanding *Predispose*,—favourably incline beforehand *Deviated*,—went away **Amazons**—A race of female warriors **The island peopled with Amazons described by Marco Polo.**

Marco Polo writes — ' You find the two Islands, Male and Female, lying about 30 miles distant from one another In the Island however which is called Male, dwell the men alone, without their wives or any other women. Every year when the month of March arrives, the men all set out for the other island and tarry there for three months dwelling with their wives for that space As for the children which their wives bear to them, if they be girls, they abide with their mothers, but if they be boys, the mothers bring them up till they are fourteen and then send them to their fathers ' *Bk III Ch XXXI. (Yule's Translation)*

**Page 114** *Intelligence*—news, tidings *Such a discovery*,—the discovery of this Amazonian Island *Conclusive proof*,—Decisive evidence *Identity*,—sameness *Worth while*—*re*, worth his while=proper for one's spending time; hence, proper. *In quest of*,—in search of *Fabulous*,—feigned, as a fable, fictitious *Home-sickness*,—depression of spirits, occasioned by a separation from home *Took possession of the crews*,—completely overpowered the minds of the sailors *Murmurs*,—complaints *Prolongation*,—lengthening *Currents*,—viz., the Gulf Stream, &c *Reefs*,—chains of rocks lying at or near the surface of the water. *In deference to*,—out of respect for *Resumed*,—

(*Le* and *Sumo*, I take) took up again; i. e., followed again. *Adverse*,—unfavourable **Trade-winds**,—Winds in the torrid zone, and often a little beyond, which blow from the same quarter throughout the year, unless when affected by local causes Their general direction is from N E, to S W, on the north side, of the equator, and from S E, to N W, on the south side of the equator. *Retarded*,—diminished Lessened *Overtook*,—caught

**Page 115.** *Rose to a hurricane*,—so increased in fury as to assume the character of a regular violent tempest' *Hurricane*,—a violent storm, distinguished by the vehemence of the wind and the sudden changes to which it is subject *Could only drift helplessly*,—could only be driven by the gusts of the winds, being completely at their mercy **Close-reefed**,—having a portion of the top or bottom folded, and made fast to the yard **Fore-sail**,—a sail extended on the fore-yard, which is supported by the fore-mast *Which kept her of the sea*,—which constantly upbore her upon the surface of the sea, and prevented her from being closed, as it were, within the deep cavity made by the rising of the huge waves of the ocean *Though*,—(Lit) a hollow vessel, hence, a cavity or hollow space **Were scudding under bare poles**, were being driven with precipitation before a tempest. (A nautical phrase) This is done with just sufficient sail to keep the vessels ahead of the sea, or when the wind is too violent, without any sails set, which is called *scudding under bare poles* *Fell*,—set in *Blinding spray*,—water driven from the top of the waves by wind, and spreading and flying in all directions in small particles which caused dimness to eyesight *His*,—Columbus's *His panic-stricken despair*,—the sailors under him, whose hearts were overpowered with sudden and unexpected fear, considered their case as altogether hopeless, and despaired of saving their lives *Howled*,—roared *The seas burst vessel*—The waves struck against his disabled ship *The seas*,—the fragments or portions of the ocean, here waves *Skilled navigator*, efficient manner. *Must have felt night*,—must have felt himself lonely and helpless being thus overtaken by the hurricane and the darkness of the night *Bore him up*,—

kept up his spirits ; kept his spirits from utter dejection. *And his wonderful... forsake him*,—he did not lose his extraordinary presence of mind or readiness of wit which enabled him to hit upon clever plans or contrivances in critical times of pressing necessity. *Stores were consumed*, articles of food were used up *Felt the want of*,—was under the necessity of. **Ballast**—The load of stones, sand, &c., which is laid in the hold of a ship, when there is no cargo, in order to keep it steady or in equipoise in the water. *Casks*,—barrels. *Expedient*,—contrivance

**Page 116.**—*Suggest*,—devise. *To invoke the aid* . *expedition*,—to implore the assistance of God who, as it appeared to Columbus, prompted him to take upon himself the charge of the enterprise *To draw lots*,—to take out one from two or more things (tickets, pieces of paper, and the like) the marks of which are concealed from the person. *The shrine of Our Lady of Guadalupe*,—the temple of Virgin Mary in the convent at Guadalupe—a town in Spain in the province of Estremadura *Guadalupe*,—a town in the province of Estremadura in Spain Columbus named one of the islands of the Indies after this town. *The lot fell to the admiral*,—the admiral (Columbus) was chosen by lottery *Vow*,—a solemn promise *In procession*,—in a train. *Clad in penitential garments*,—having put on clothes expressive of penitence or contrition of heart *The Virgin*,—Mary *Unexpected consequences*,—unforeseen results (see text page 118) *Weathering the storm*,—bearing up against, and resisting, the storm, though with great difficulty *That if possible, the tidings with him*,—the news of the discovery of the New World should not be allowed to be hushed up with the destruction of his own life, but, should be communicated, if possible, to the old world, by some means or other *Parchment*,—(L *Pergamena*, said to be from *Pergamos*, a city in Asia Minor from having been invented there) The skin of a sheep or goat dressed or prepared, and rendered fit for writing on *In wax*,—so as to make it water-proof. *Committed to*,—threw into.

**Page 117** *Contents of*,—things contained in *Rite*,—ceremony. *Assuage the fury of the elements*,—mitigate or

lessen the violence of the elements, viz., of the sea and the sky, i. e., the waves and the tempest. *The storm abated to some extent*,—the fury of the storm was diminished in some measure. **The E. N. E.**—A direction corresponding to the so-named intermediate point of the Mariner's Compass. The magnetic needle of the Mariner's Compass which always points to the north, is fixed to a circular board, on which there is a star of 32 rays, marking the 32 points of the heavens. The north point of the card is immediately over the north end of the needle, and the card moves with the needle. The cardinal points are marked with the letters *N*, *S*, *E*, *W*, and the intermediate points, with, *N* / *E*, *N. N. E*, *N. E* / *N*, *N. E*, &c. **The Rock of Lisbon**,—or Cape Roca, the extreme western point of Estremadura and of the continent of Europe. *To make head against*,—to overcome, to resist successfully. *To bring up*,—to cast anchor.

**Page 118.** *Amicable messages*,—friendly tidings. *Bare-foot and in their shirts*,—these are the signs of "penitential" attitude. **Satellites**.—(Lat) Secondary planets, or small planets revolving round larger planets; hence, followers, obsequious attendants or dependents, (a term of contempt) *Lay in ambush*,—lay in wait for them, for the purpose of attacking them by surprise (from a concealed place) *The Crowns*,—i. e., the monarchs. *Dressed in*,—invested with. *Remonstrances*,—expostulations. *Were of no avail*,—were of no use, were not heeded. *To stand out to sea*,—to direct the course of the ship from the harbour to the open sea. *St Michael's*,—i. e., St. Michael's island, the largest of the group, of the Azores. *Recognising*,—taking due notice of. *Supervened*,—came upon, or happened to them (as something extraneous).

**Page 119.** *Raged, with destructive violence*,—continued with a fury which caused much injury to people. **Lee-shore**—The shore under the lee of a ship, or that part toward which the wind blows. *Reached their climax*,—rose to the highest or culminating point. *Miracle*,—a supernatural event. *His seamanship, emergency*,—his skill as a navigator was just up to the mark of the danger.

*Despatch*,—letter *With this . comply*,—he thought it proper to comply with or act in accordance with this request *This must have mind*,—to a man of noble disposition like Columbus, this cordial reception with many marks of honour accorded by that very personage (the king of Portugal) who had previously slighted him, was more than a triumph *Took occasion to put in a claim*,—embraced this opportunity of laying claim to *Basing*,—founding *Papal bull*,—edict or mandate issued by the Pope, and having his seal affixed to it *Previous Chapter*  
Ch I, page 21

**Page 120.** *His sovereigns*—Ferdinand and Isabella *Repudiate*,—Disavow, reject *Decidedly*,—definitely, in plain and definite terms *His royal host*,—the sovereign of Portugal by whom Columbus was then received as a *guest*

**Page 120.** *Possibly mistrusting subordinates*—It is because perhaps Columbus feared that the ships might be endangered on their way from Portugal to Spain by the unskilful handling of his subordinates, if he was absent from amongst them, that—*Conduct*—escort *Transport*,—passage *In the teeth of*,—in spite of the presence of *Heavy*,—swelling and rolling with great force *Starting point*—The place from which he set out on his voyage *Again a Friday*,—like the day of starting **Not an individual hero**,—There was not a single individual member of the band of explorers who was not raised up to the status of a hero,—an important personage to be much admired for his share of the great achievement **Not a debtor or a criminal enthusiasm**.—There was not a single borrower of money or a felon (amongst the explorers) who had been tempted to join the expedition and to endure the hardships thereof, not out of his own accord but in order to avail himself of the privileges of the suspension of all criminal processes against all culprits, granted by the royal proclamation—that had not made a sufficient atonement for his social crimes in the estimation of his fellow-men, and had not become a person of much importance in their eyes and an object of their zealous ad-

mination. *But*,—(a Relative Pronoun, and a negative)= That or who not. *The charter of immunity*—See P. 80, Footnote *Immunity*,—exemption from any public service, burden or charge

**Page 121.** *In general terms*—Broadly, without entering into the details. *Made*,—reached, arrived at (a sea-man's word) "*His*"—Put within inverted commas, to show his presumption *Ignored*,—taken no notice of *Chagrin*—(Pron · Shagrēn) Mortification, vexation *Overcame*,—overpowered *Took to his bed*,—fell ill, and was confined to bed. *Mental distress*,—disorder of mind caused by extreme disappointment. *Broken heart*,—utter mortification

*N B*—Read similar accounts of death of broken heart of the great Persian poet, Ferdousi, and of Umichand, while entering into an intrigue with Clive. *Entered into*,—Secured *Comprehended*,—conceived *Over and over again*,—repeatedly.

**Page 122.** *Poured out*,—came out in interminable succession (Metaphor from a torrent of water). *The street could not contain them*,—there was not room enough in the streets to hold them in.

**A triumphal procession**—Among the ancient Romans, a pompous ceremony performed in honour of a victorious general. He was allowed to enter the city crowned with a wreath of laurel, bearing a sceptre in one hand, and a branch of laurel, in the other, riding in a circular chariot, of a peculiar form, drawn by four horses. He was preceded by the Senate and magistrates, musicians, the spoils, the captives in fetters, &c, and followed by his army on foot in marching order. The procession in this manner moved to the Capitoline hill, where sacrifices were offered and the victorious commander entertained with a public feast.

Read the following description of the triumphal procession of Columbus —

His entrance into this noble city has been compared to one of those triumphs which the Romans were accustomed to decree to conquerors—*First* were paraded the Indians, painted according to their savage fashion, and decorated with their national ornaments of gold *After these*, were borne various kinds of live parrots together with stuffed birds and animals of unknown species,



and rare plants supposed to be of precious qualities, while great care was taken to make a conspicuous display of Indian coronets, bracelets, and other decorations of gold, which might give an idea of the wealth of the newly-discovered regions. *After this*, followed Columbus on horseback, surrounded by a brilliant cavalcade of Spanish chivalry—*Irving*

**The world has not yet seen.**—Was superior to any ordinary triumphal procession ever decreed to the victorious Roman generals on their return from the conquered land, because it was a triumph of a superior intelligence over the prejudices of Columbus's fellow-men, and not a triumph of mere brute force over inferior or savage nations. *It was a thing alert*,—it was so full of interest that even those that were devoid of all inquisitiveness, were made active and watchful. *Even the sad and mob*,—supply "*to make*," before '*even*' *Sad*,—used in the Elizabethan sense=serious, thoughtful, grave. *The mob*,—the rabble, the common people (From *L mobilis*, movable, easily to be carried) **A Roman general's car.**—

A circular chariot, of a peculiar form, drawn by four horses, in which the victorious Roman general would ride, while entering the city of Rome in a triumphal procession. *Were not unknown creatures*,—like the natives of the newly discovered land. **Here was the conqueror of centuries**—The hero of the present triumphal procession was Columbus, who was unquestionably far superior to the victorious Roman general, as being the conqueror not of man, but of the supposed impassable barrier of nature (*viz*, the Atlantic Ocean &c),—not of an inferior brute force by means of a superior kind of animal power, but of the long-existing vague terrors of the mysterious and unknown regions,—of the fearful wind and waves,—and above all, of the blind superstitious notions of men, several hundred years old, regarding the formation and distribution of land and water of the globe we live in. *Must have gone*,—must have been afloat or current. *Beaming satisfaction*,—shining with humility and self-complacency.

**Page 123. Recounted.**—Narrated, related. **A story more . . . close to home.**—A story more attrac-

tive and charming than that narrated in the court of the Carthaginian queen Dido, by Æneas, the Trojan prince, about his personal adventures after sailing from Troy, who, like Columbus, had narrowly escaped death by being shipwrecked, just before reaching home. Just as Columbus narrowly escaped by being shipwrecked near the European coast—his home, so Æneas narrowly escaped death close to the coast of Italy—his newly adopted home. The adventures of Æneas form the subject-matter of Virgil's *Æneid*, and Æneas is represented in the 2nd and 3rd Books of Virgil's Epic as telling Dido the wonderful tale of the wooden horse, the burning of Troy, his flight, the perils he met with on the way and the death of his father. *Unpretending*,—simple and unaffected *New things and creatures*,—for a description, read Irving's account of the procession, quoted Notes on P 122 *Fell on their knees*,—knelt down, in an attitude of prayer. *Tears*,—indicative of joy and gratitude *Choristers*,—singers in a choir or concert *This grand ceremonial*,—this imposing or pompous ceremony.

The "Te Deum"—(Præse be to the Lord),—a well-known hymn, so called from its first words, (*Te Deum Laudamus, Te Dominum Confitemur*) of the Roman Catholic Church, sung on all occasions of triumph and thanksgiving. The hymn is simple, solemn and majestic. Its authorship is unknown, but it is said to be the joint production of St Augustine and St Ambrose. From this supposed origin, the *Te Deum* is commonly called the *Ambrosian Hymn*.

*And the then the choristers . Te Deum —cf Irving —*

"The anthem *Te Deum Laudamus*, chanted by the choir of the royal chapel with the accompaniment of instruments, rose in full body of sacred harmony, bearing up, as it were, the feelings and thoughts of the auditors to heaven, "so that," says the venerable Las Casas, "it seemed as if in that hour they communicated with celestial delights."

*Symbol of a great work*,—emblem of great philanthropic labours towards the amelioration of the native Americans. *Something to be . generation*,—a subject serious enough to be pondered over for many years to come, viz, the question of the emancipation of slaves, and the abolition of slave-trade. *Marks of approbation*,—signs of approval and

praise *Confirmed*,—ratified **Coat of arms**.—Armorial device; that on which ensigns armorial are portrayed. (Originally, a sur-coat worn by knights over their armour, decorated with devices by which heralds described the wearer Hence the heraldic device of a family. Coat-armour was invented in the crusading expeditions, to distinguish the various noble warriors when wrapped in complete steel, and it was introduced into England by Richard the Lion-hearted ) *Significance*,—importance *In augmentation of his own*,—by making additions to his own heraldic device *Emblazoned*,—adorned with figures or ensigns armorial *Arms*,—ensigns armorial, or armorial devices *Such a grant*,—viz, this new coat of arms, containing both the personal heraldic device of Columbus and the armorial bearings of the sovereigns,—thus for ever associating the name of Columbus with their own

**Page 124** *Don*,—(Sp) Lord *Served at table*,—honoured at public dinner tables *Grandee*,—peer, noble *All hail*,—(Lat) Be of perfect health, a mode of salutation *Happy in that*,—happy and fortunate in this respect, viz, in finding great men amongst them *The more prosaic part of the business*,—the less interesting or romantic portion of the affair *The sovereign empire and principality*,—the right both of a paramount ruler and a prince, or subordinate chief *Hemisphere*,—division of the globe (Lat *Hemi*, half, *sphere*, globe) *The Pope granted*,—by publishing a bull on the third May, 1493

To preserve the peace between Spain and Portugal,—The former bull of the Pope “supported by another, dated on the following day, in order to obviate any misunderstanding with the Portuguese defined with greater precision the intention of his original grant to the Spanish sovereigns by bestowing on them all such lands as they should discover to the west and south of an imaginary line, to be drawn from pole and pole, at the distance of one hundred leagues to the west of the Azores and Cape de Verd Islands It seems to have escaped his Holiness, that the Spaniards, by pursuing a western route, might in time reach the eastern limits of countries previously granted to the Portuguese”—*Present*

*Pontiff*,—The high priest, i e, the Pope of Rome.

**Page 125.** *The apostolic bulls*,—The mandates issued

by the Apostle, i e, the Pope, (having his *seals* affixed to them) The bulls were dated on the 3rd and 4th of May, 1493 (See notes *ante*) *Parenthetically*,—by way of a parenthetical statement, i e, by the bye *And was, we entered heaven*,—This is a sarcasm against the belief of the efficacy of the mere ceremony of baptism *Guacanagari*,—see Pages-106—110 *Already*,—i e, before being converted to Christianity *The regions of the blessed*,—the abode of the happy spirits, i e., heaven *Boldness*,—presumption *Singularity*,—eccentricity *Profound import*,—deep significance

*Profound import attached to baptism* It is equally certain, however, that they attached great value in a spiritual view to the mere show of conversion, placing implicit confidence in the purifying influence of the waters of baptism, to whomever and under whatever circumstances administered"—*Prescott*

*Seeming inconsistencies*,—apparent incongruities or contradictions. (Read Pages 4 and 243 Text)

**Page 126.** *Equivocal*,—Ambiguous, capable of double interpretation. *Religious care*,—care about the spiritual needs

*A special department* . *Juan de Fonseca* "A board was established for the direction of Indian affairs, consisting of a superintendent and two subordinate functionaries The first of these officers was Juan de Fonseca, arch-deacon of Seville, *an active, ambitious prelate, subsequently raised to high episcopal preferment, whose shrewdness and capacity for business enabled him to maintain the control of the Indian department during the whole of the present reign* An office for the transaction of business was instituted at Seville, and a custom-house placed under its direction at Cadiz This was the origin of the important establishment of the *Casa de la Contratacion de las Indias* or *India House*" *Prescott*.

*Ecclesiastio*,—clergyman *Patriarch*,—(Lat) the father and ruler of a family A dignitary superior to the order of arch-bishops *Forbearing*,—forgiving. *Task-master*, one who imposes tasks or burdens with labour *Implacable*—Inexorable, unrelenting. *Long administration of Indian*,

*affairs*,—his management of all matters relating to the Indies, for a lengthy period—(for about 30 years) *Qualities*,—characteristics, viz, vices. *Was instrumental in*,—acted as a means to

**Page 127** *Artificers*,—Artisans *'Gaudy trifles*,—splendid or showy toys and other nick-nacks *There was no need to press men into the service now*,—there was no longer any necessity for compelling men to enter the naval service now, because the discovery of land across the Atlantic was already an accomplished fact *Volunteers*,—persons who offered their services of their own accord without charging salaries *The fever for discovery was universal*,—the mad or feverish excitement for undertaking voyages of discovery was wide-spread *Outskirts*,—borders **The scriptural land of Havilah** *was not far off*,—Havilah, the land of gold, as described in the Bible, was not at a great distance from the land he had discovered

"And a river went out of Eden to water the garden, and from thence it was parted, and became into four heads The name of the first is Pison that is it which compasseth the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold and the gold of that land is good there is bdellium and the Onyx stone"—*Genesis, II, 10 11, 12*

*Untold*,—countless (The radical meaning of the verb *to tell* is to count) *Anticipate*,—expect before hand *Prodigious fortune*,—immense riches *Nor* . . . *was uncared for*,—i e, was duly looked after *Eager to enlighten* . . . *western lands*,—who were very anxious to dispel the darkness of the soul, (i e, want of religious wisdom) of the people of the lands discovered in the west, i e, who were very anxious to impart religious wisdom to the heathens of the newly discovered lands in the west *A Benedictine monk*,—a friar belonging to the order of St Benedict The first Benedictine monastery was that founded at Monte Cassino, in the kingdom of Naples, about 529, by St Benedict himself After the 6th century, the Benedictines were the main agents in the spread of Christianity, civilisation and learning in the west. *An authorized* . . . *the faith*,—a teaching of

Christianity sanctioned and approved of, by the Pope. *Strokes*,—blows *Obdurate*,—(L ob and Duo, to harden) *Hardened*, unyielding.

**Page 128.** *Mass of colonial difficulty*,—heaps of difficulties arising from the colonial government of Spain. *Incessant working*,—continual or uninterrupted labours. *Great princes*,—e. g. Ferdinand V, Philip the Handsome, Charles V., Philip II., &c. *Great churchmen*,—great ecclesiastics, like Las Casas. *Hammered*,—struck by dint of perseverance. *Into some . . . of mercy*,—into some form of justice and clemency, which proceed from a tolerant disposition. **The instructions to Columbus**—(P 127) . . . . . **wisdom and of mercy** (P. 128)—*Purpose*,—the colonial government of Spain was entrusted to the care of some unscrupulous persons; so the government of the Spanish colonies was tyrannical in the extreme, and seemed to be almost incorrigible, but after the incessant labours of eminent philanthropists, it showed certain disposition towards justice and mercy to the unfortunate Indians. **The metaphor comes from forging iron.** It is comparatively easy to give some shape to a piece of iron, by striking it when it is yet hot, when it is hardened the attempt at shaping it is very difficult, but an energetic smith can succeed in his effort by dint of perseverance and repeated strokes of his hammer upon it. The colonial government beset with heaps of difficulties is here compared to a hardened mass of iron, the incessant labours of philanthropists, to the repeated blows of the smith, and the assumption of a disposition towards justice and mercy, to the shape the iron assumes, after continual hammering. *In the course of these instructions* . . . . . *severely*,—cf. the exact text of the instructions referred to here, as quoted from Prescott, —

"He was particularly enjoined to abstain from all means of annoyance, and to treat them well and *lovingly*, maintaining a familiar intercourse with them, rendering them all the kind offices in his power, distributing presents of the merchandise and various commodities which their highnesses had caused to be embarked on board the fleet for that purpose, and, finally, to *chastise* in the most

*exemplary manner all who should offer the natives the slightest molestations "*

*All the armada is charged*—All the people taking part in the expedition and sailing on board the vessels, should be strictly enjoined. *Early period of his administration*,—beginning of his career of regulating the colonial affairs, as being the head of the "*India House*." *Now at the zenith...favour*,—being now in the enjoyment of the highest degree of the favour of the Sovereigns *Zenith*, the point of the heavens overhead, opposite to the *nadir*, hence, the highest point: *Demurred*,—complained. *Footmen*,—menial servants *Domestic establishment*,—personal staff of servants or attendants

## CHAPTER VI.

**Page 129.** *Singularly*,—remarkably *Prosperous*, attended with good results *Wasted*,—bore; conveyed *Wise management*,—skilful or dexterous manipulation. *Track*,—course, way *Route*—(Fr)—Course or way which is travelled or passed

**Page 130.** *Accordingly*— **Dominica . is-land.**—As Sunday is specially sanctified as the day of the Lord, the island newly discovered on a Sunday was named *Dominica*, or pertaining to the Lord (Lat)

*Cf Exodus XX 8—10* "Remember the sabbath day to keep it holy, six days shalt thou labour, and do all thy work, but the seventh day is the sabbath of the Lord thy God, in it thou shalt not do any work "

*Stood northward*.—Held his course towards the north. *After*,—in imitation of the name of *Flagship*,—the ship which bears the commanding officer of a squadron and in which his flag is displayed *Cannibal*,—a savage who eats human flesh (Supposed to be a corruption of *Caribales*, a name given by Columbus to the *Caribs*, who showed a rabid appetite for human flesh.) *Roasting*,—being roasted, dressed by exposure to heat. *When their safety was despaired of*,—when all hopes of the security or safety of their lives were given up

**Page 131.** *Where a profound them*—Where they were to experience a deep mortification, at seeing their

colony utterly destroyed. *Razed to the ground*,—demolished from the very foundation. *To tell the tale*,—to recount the story of their destruction, to relate how the rest were destroyed. *Took to evil course*,—adopted vicious ways of life. *Straggled about the country*,—were dispersed in the neighbouring villages without any definite object. *Set upon*,—assaulted or attacked. *Cupidity*,—avarice, covetousness, an inordinate or unlawful desire for wealth. *Profligacy*,—a state of being abandoned in moral principle. Moral depravity.

**Page 132** *The cupidity ..gross...vengeance of the natives*—“They soon began to indulge in the most wanton abuses. Some were prompted by rapacious avarice, and sought to possess themselves, by all kinds of wrongful means, of the golden ornaments and other valuable property of the natives. Others were grossly sensual, and not content with two or three wives allowed to each by Guacanagari, seduced the wives and daughters of the Indians”—*W. Irving*.

*The not unreasonable*,—i.e., the reasonable; justifiable. *Cacique*,—(a Mexican word, another form of which is *Cazique*) The title of a king or chief, among several tribes of the Indians in America. *Amicably*,—(L. *Amo*, I love) In a friendly manner. *He was.. as before*,—as a natural consequence of the evil courses of the lives of the Europeans, who formed the garrison at *La Navidad*, Guacanagari could hardly have been so friendly to the Europeans, as he had been before. *Disgusting licentiousness*,—most abominable profligacy or depravity in morals. *The white men*,—viz, the Europeans. *Debased profligates*,—depraved or abandoned wretches devoid of all regard to principles or virtue.

**Page 133.** *After his royal mistress*,—in imitation of the name of Isabella, the Queen of Spain. *Was disproportionate .them*,—was not commensurate with the stock of provisions he had brought with him, i.e., the number of men was greater than the supply of provisions. *Began to fail*,—began to run short. *And worst of Spain*,—and the most painful of all the adverse circumstances they were now labouring under, was that none of those sweet fancies and expectations of acquiring boundless



wealth in the New World, under the charm of which, they had left Spain, were fulfilled. *To tell upon*,—to affect or produce injurious influence upon. *The iron constitution*,—the robust and stout health. "*Be*,"—is a misprint for "*he*" *Was stretched upon*,—was confined to.

**Page 134.** *Elucidate them by discourse*,—explain their meanings clearly by holding a conference on the subject, in course of the interview *Despatch*,—a letter on some public affair. *The foreign minister*,—the minister in charge of the foreign department *The power with*,—the government with which we are carrying on negotiations. *Usual strain*,—customary tone *Complimentary address*,—address full of praises *Hold it for*,—consider it as *Much thanks*,—the use of *much* here is not happy, *many* should be used.

**Page 135.** *Leaky*,—admitting the liquor to pass out *Make good loss*,—compensate for the loss out of their own money *Touches upon*,—Deals with.

**Page 136.** *Castilian*,—the Castilian dialect of the Spanish language *Cannibalism*,—eating of man's flesh *For so*,—because, by this means *They will gain their souls*,—They will make a vast and unexpected progress, from absolute soul-lessness or gross animality to a high degree of spirituality by being converted to Christianity. *Impending*,—imminent

**Page 137.** *Goes much further*,—deals with the question more definitely. *Live-stock*,—cattle, and other smaller domestic animals. *In slaves*,—the prices being *slaves* and not coins. *Customs duties*,—tax, toll, impost or any sum of money required by government to be paid on the importation, exportation or consumption of goods *Levy*,—impose *At the same time* . *proposed*,—although we must take a charitable view of Columbus's intention, which, in his own estimation, was no doubt a noble one, as it provided for the spiritual welfare of the natives, yet it must be freely acknowledged that it was, by far, the most definite proposal for the introduction of slave-trade that was ever made *To their honour*,—in consonance with the dignity of their lofty position.

**Page 138.** *It is suspended for the present,—the final decision of this matter is put off or postponed for the present. A confused answer,—a vague reply Proposition from a valued friend,—proposal of a respected friend But has kindly,—but has to be thrown away or set aside gently, so as not to hurt his feelings Had hitherto proved outlay,—had till now showed itself to be a concern not in the least degree lucrative, or to be a dead-stock Outlay,—investment The prospect of conversion,—the sure chance of having a large number of the natives converted to Christianity Was probably princes,—was perhaps most welcome to both these sovereigns, viz., Ferdinand and Isabella Certainly to one of them,—Undoubtedly to one of them, if not to both, viz., Isabella, who was a sincere Christian Set aside,—rejected Los Reyes.—Ferdinand and Isabella Cf:—Helps' "Spanish Conquest of America," Vol I P 129*

"The agreement between him and Los Reyes (Ferdinand and Isabella will, henceforth, be often called Los Reyes, as they are in the histories of that time) was confirmed" "*Los Reyes Catolicos*"—*Herrera*

*Distracted state,—disordered condition Scant fare,—insufficient food. Were having their effect,—were producing their injurious results Armament,—a land or naval force, armed, or equipped for war*

**Page 139.** *Hidalgoes,—(a Spanish word) Nobles of the lowest class (in Spain) Manually,—by hand, i e, physically; bodily (L Manus, hand) Under regulations strictly enforced,—under rules rigidly carried into effect Harsh way him,—stern manner of treating his subordinates. Took their rise,—came into existence. Pursued him ..ruin,—followed him doggedly throughout his future career till his fall. Mutiny,—an insurrection of soldiers or seamen against the authority of their commanders. Headed by,—Under the leadership of High in authority,—highly influential. Quelled,—put down. Effect,—carry out. The mining district,—the tract of land fit for mining operations, or the employment of digging into the earth for the purpose of discovering*

metallic ores, mineral substances, &c. *Consolidated*,—made firm or solid.

**Page 140.** *Transit*,—conveyance *Inconsiderate*,—thoughtless *Stood in the way of*,—thwarted, baffled *A wish but to spirit*,—a desire, which was very eagerly backed and taken up for execution by Columbus with his usual adventurous spirit *Hankering*,—yearning, or longing desire *Fostered*,—stimulated and nourished, i.e., kept up *Plant its standard*,—fix its banner, as a sign of the taking of possession *Much-coveted*, longed for *Acting upon such views*,—in accordance with such principles. *Bent upon*,—being desirous of making

**Page 141.** *Put to sea*,—set sail, began his voyage.

## CHAPTER VII.

**Page 142.** *In the course of*,—during *Ensued*,—followed *Drowsiness*,—sleepiness, heaviness with sleep. *Las Casas calls*,—viz, in his "*History of the Indies*" *Pestilential*,—producing or tending to produce infectious disease, partaking of the nature of infectious diseases. *Privations*,—hardships and troubles

**Page 143.** *Lethargical attack*,—attack of lethargy, or morbid sleepiness **Judgment.**—a remarkable punishment, an extraordinary calamity inflicted by God on sinners *Make much of*,—esteem

**Page 144.** *Sad state of disorganisation*,—deplorable condition of disorder *Were in arms*,—Revolted *Injudicious*,—inconsiderate *Impressing upon the natives*,—instilling into the minds of the natives *Rigorous*,—strict, hence, impartial or even-handed *Artifice*,—trick

**Page 145.** *Consumed*,—used up, exhausted. *Voracious appetite*,—devouring or ravenous hunger. *Waste*,—extravagance *Rapine*,—plunder or violence. *Followed in their steps*,—constantly attended them *Upon equal terms*,—on the footing of equality. *Swarming about*,—thronging in large number around *Hostile intent*,—inimical purpose. *A modern historian*,—viz, Munoz, in his *Hist del Nuevo-Mundo i c*, History of the New World. *But for*,—were it not for. *Opportune*,—at the

right moment. *Swept away*,—destroyed. *Set fire to*,—burned. *Engaged*,—gave battle to.

**Page 146.** *Daunted*,—checked by fear, dispirited for fear. *Molest*,—attack and injure. *Sallied out*,—went forth; set out *Utterly put to flight*,—hopelessly routed, and so made to take to their heels

**Page 147.** *In speaking of such. ....bloodhounds*,—while speaking of this defeat which the Indians suffered, the modern reader, should not freely heap such words of ignominy as "*cowardly*" or "*pusillanimous*" (little-minded) upon them, because it should be considered that it was almost impossible for them to fight with the Europeans, who possessed far superior advantages over them, as suits of armour, fire-arms, (guns or muskets), horsemanship, &c, &c *Lavish*,—profuse. *Pusillanimous*,—(L. *Pusillus*, very little, from *pupus*, a little child, and *Animus*, the mind) little-minded; mean-spirited, faint-hearted. *Fire-arms*,—arms which expel their charge by the combustion of powder. *Steel-clad men*,—men clad in steel, i. e., suits of armour. *Clinging ferocity*,—obstinate fierceness "*Horrible carnage*,"—terrible slaughter. The phrase is quoted from Munoz's *History of the New World*. *Actor in the sad drama*,—a leading agent in the mournful proceedings (A metaphor from a theatrical representation) *Cajole*. *friendly meeting*,—so coax or deceive Caonabo by flattery as to induce him to accept an invitation to hold a friendly interview with the Spaniards.

**Page 148.** *Gyves*,—fettters or shackles for the legs. *Manacles*,—handcuffs, shackles for fastening the hands. *Satirically*,—ironically. *Esposas*,—i. e. espouses, wives. *Finely wrought*,—artistically worked or manufactured. *Summoning the to mass*,—inviting the Spaniards to attend the communion-service in the Roman Catholic church at Isabella *Simple*,—credulous, silly, foolish. *Held in such estimation*,—esteemed or valued so highly. *Anything that descends from heaven*,—a God-send.

**Page 149.** *Theirs*,—i. e., their subjects *Incautious*,—careless; unwary *Fallen entirely trap*,—been completely ensnared. *Escort*,—a body of armed personal

attendants *Ablutions*,—purification or cleansing by water  
*They all the horse*,—they all this time, remaining at a  
 great distance from the horse, as if from a feeling of awe  
*Darted off for*,—rushed away with great speed, (like an  
 arrow shot by a skilful archer) in the direction of. *Keep-*  
*ing to the main track*,—following closely the principal  
 path-way.—*To evade pursuit*,—to escape being chased or  
 followed

**Page 150.** "*Offering themselves. . own ways*,—  
 this is a quotation from Munoz's *Hist of the New World*.  
*Vassalage*,—political servitude, dependence, subjection  
*Repartimientos*,—a system of tribute imposed by Columbus  
 upon the natives. Its exact nature is described in the  
 Text Read the passage from "*He now took occasion, &c*,  
*P. 150. as they were afterwards called Para 10. Page*  
*151.*

*Arroba*,—a weight of 25 lbs. (Spanish).

**Page 151.** *Institute*,—establish, set on foot  
*Stretching*,—extending *Modify*,—lessen the amount of  
*Uprisings*,—insurrections

**Page 152.** *Views were regard to*,—opinions were  
 about "*I do not think island as captives*,"—this pass-  
 age is quoted from *Navarrete, Col, V I P. 2 Avaricious*.  
 —covetous, having an inordinate hankering after money  
*Reduce*,—curtail *Prove himself had said*,—justify  
 himself in all the opinions he had given *Confute*,—to  
 prove to be fallacious or wrong

**Page 153.** *Prisoners of war*,—Men taken as cap-  
 tives during a war *Money for*,—proceeds of *Theo-*  
*logians*,—professors of divinity. *Canonists*,—men versed  
 in cannon law *With a good conscience*,—conscientiously  
*Munoz*,—the author of the *History of the New World*, &c  
 see ante. *Indefatigable*,—unwearied *If he*,—although  
 he (Munoz). *Direct*,—strictly bearing upon the subject  
 opposed to "circumstantial"

**Page 154.** *The so-called free*,—independent only  
 in name, but not in reality. *Brethren*,—fellow-men. *To*  
*starve the Spaniards out*,—to put the Spaniards to death by

compelling to remain without food. *Shallow device*,—an imprudent plan. *The scheme...themselves*,—the evil of this plan rebounded on the originators themselves. *Sustenance*,—means of living. *They were only.....Indians*,—yet the only result it produced was that the Spaniards were all the more urged 'by their privations' caused by the famine to hunt down the Indians and harass them, with vengeance.

**Page 155.** *Mission*,—the object of his being sent thither. *Vouched for*,—fully attested to or confirmed. *Cavaliers*,—knights. *Esquire*,—(L. *Scutum*,—shield) Lat, a shield-bearer, an attendant on a knight, a person holding a title of dignity next in degree below a knight. *Credence*,—belief, faith.

His 'proceedings in the Colony.'—"Puffed up with such sudden elevation, Aguado displayed, in the exercise of this office, all the frivolous self-importance, and acted with all the disgusting insolence, which are natural to little minds, when raised to an unexpected dignity, or employed in functions to which they are not equal. By listening with eagerness to every accusation against Columbus, and encouraging not only the malcontent Spaniards, but even the Indians, to produce their grievances, real or imaginary, he fomented the spirit of dissenision in the island, without establishing any regulations of public utility or that tended to redress the many wrongs, with the odium of which he wished to load the admiral's administration"—*Robertson*

*Quenched*,—enlivened. *Fight his own battles*,—advocate his own cause.

**Page 156.** *The tide of his fortune was turning*,—the run of his good luck was now almost over, his good fortune was fast declining. *Representations of*,—accounts given by. *Had produced their effect*,—had borne fruit, proved efficacious. *Footing*,—rank. *Rations*,—fixed allowances of provisions, drink, &c, assigned to each soldier in the army or sailor in the navy, for his subsistence. *Mania*,—hobby; eccentric desire. *Unremunerative*,—unprofitable, not yielding any gain. *Investigate these charges*,—weigh and inquire into the truth of these accusations. *Substantiate*,—verify; establish by proof, or competent evidence. *An unsuccessful failure*,—a man whose life is not attended with success is, generally disposed to lay

his misfortune at another's door *The "some body else,"*—the second person who is supposed to be the cause of the misfortune. *The foreign sea-captain,*—Columbus, being an Italian, was really a foreigner to the Spaniards *Deluded,*—deceived *Wild projects,*—visionary schemes.

**Page 157** *To lay at the door of,*—to assign to; to ascribe to *Who were told one,*—"he was looked upon as a declining man, and Agnado hailed as the lord of the ascendant." *Irving Quota,*—share *License,*—a certificate giving permission or authority *Took ship,*—embarked *Who had been dreams,*—who had been brought to their senses from their wild and fantastical expectations of acquiring boundless wealth, and had been convinced of the sternness of the reality after gaining sad and bitter experiences in the New World *Impressing upon, . . it,*—instilling into his mind a crushing belief of the power of the Spanish Crown, and of the fruitlessness of any endeavours on the part of the natives to oppose it. *Began to run short,*—began to fail. *Doled out in pittances,*—measured and distributed in small quantities among them. *Grow scantier and scantier,*—diminished more and more in quantity. *Ravenous,*—voraciously hungry or greedy *Ship-mates,*—persons serving in the same ship

**Page 158** *In retribution . cannibalism,*—in retaliation of their practice of eating human flesh—such is the horrid joke that passes current. *Famine,*—scarcity of food. *Imminent,*—about to break out; impending *Burgos,*—the capital of old Castile. *Dazzling the . . populace,*—bewildering the common people with an ostentatious display of wealth and power. *Sick at heart,*—sorely grieved and mortified *To tell failure,*—to recount the sad story of the utter frustration of all their golden hopes *As regards . . public,*—in point of the reception vouchsafed by the people at large, (which was cold this time) *Placing him . . . charges,*—making him justify himself against the accusations *Beset him,*—pressed him on all sides. *Sanguine,*—hopeful.

**Page 159** *Promised harvest,*—furnished grounds of hoping for an incredibly vast profit *In apparent . .*

*belief*,—seemingly in corroboration of this belief *Magnitude*, vastness, extent *Instalment*,—portion (of a vast wealth to be paid gradually) *Turned out*,—so happened. *Miserable jokes*,—worthless forger of jests *This absurdity*,—(Abstract noun for concrete.) This absurd piece of joke *And added a fresh . projects*,—furnished a fresh opportunity to his enemies of exposing and taunting him, as they had long been busy in doing, on account of the apparent unreasonableness of his scientific opinions, and the costliness of his schemes.

## CHAPTER VIII.

**Page 160.** *On both sides the Atlantic*,—i e, both in America and Europe. *If this meant .. was already decided*,—this is the author's answer to the question of the propriety of selling the natives by the sovereigns of Spain. (See Text, pp 153—4.) *Injudicious*,—imprudent *Edicts*,—rules or laws requiring obedience.

**Page 161.** *Transport*,—banish *Criminals*,—culprits *Indulgence*,—remission of punishment *Heresy*,—offence against the established religion or doctrines *Lese majeste*,—(a French phrase), High Treason *Treason*,—breach of fidelity or allegiance. *On his part*,—given by him *Might well ... saying*,—might well have caused Columbus to blush and prevented him from saying *Who did, &c*,—i e., who are so vile and depraved as not to deserve, &c *It is but.... mention*,—it will be doing only bare justice to these criminals if we mention *Even of those. . . ears*,—even among those whose ears were cut by way of an exemplary punishment, i e, those that were known as hardened criminals.

**Letters patent.**—A writing of the sovereign, sealed with the Great Seal, authorising or appointing the party to whom it is addressed to do some act, or execute some office, as creating a peer, granting a patent right to a person, who is the first inventor of some new contrivance, &c. These writings are so denominated because they are written upon open sheets of parchment, with the seal of the sovereign, pendent at the bottom

**Page 162.** *In question*,—referred to. *Of a formal character*,—written in a cut and dry style, i e., in business



*Alsatia.* **Alsatia.**—Cunningham thinks the name is borrowed from Alsace, in France, which being a frontier of the Rhine, were everlastingly the seat of war and the refuge of the disaffected

Sir Walter Scott gives the following description of **Alsatia** :  
 " White friars, adjacent to the Temple, then well known by the cant name of *Alsatia*, had, at this time, and for nearly a century afterwards, the privilege of a sanctuary, unless against the writ of the Lord Chief Justice or of the Lords of the Privy Council. Indeed, as the place abounded with desperadoes of every description,—bankrupt citizens, ruined gamblers, irreclaimable prodigals, desperate duellists,—braves, homicides, and debauched profligates of every description, all leagued together to maintain the immunities of their asylum,—it was both difficult and unsafe for the officers of the law to execute warrants, even emanating from the highest authority, amongst men whose safety was inconsistent with warrants or authority of any kind"—*The Fortunes of Nigel*

" *Not worthy of water,*"—see Text, p 161 *Roldan*, too .. to say,—as things may be said in favour of Columbus, so might also be said in favour of Roldan, had it been possible for us to hear what he had to say in his defence *Launched*,—made to be afloat

**Page 168.** *Tackle*,—ropes, rigging *Without going squabbles*,—without entering any further into the details of these petty quarrels *Taking it out*,—judging it at the stage where it manifests itself without attempting to trace it back from its immediate to the remote cause *Since the stream . time*,—since malice or ill feeling might have worked in the minds of the people of both the sides continuously and secretly for a very long time *Insubordinate*,—unwilling to submit to authority. *In a body*,—in a company or large number *To enter upon the further dealing*,—to deal with the question of his (Don Bartholomew's) treatment of the natives. *The rebels*,—The insurgents, viz, the followers of Roldan

**Page 169** *Curb*,—control *Their going*,—their siding with Roldan and his followers *Contended*,—urged *As it threatened tribute*,—because this was likely to destroy all chances of collecting tribute *Extinction*,—abolition, destruction *Fugitive*,—one who has run away (in order to evade some penalty.) *Did not seek war*,—did not, of his

own accord, court war with him *By fire and sword*,—the houses having been set fire to, and men, put to the sword, i. e. killed.

**Page 170.** *Negotiations*,—terms of peace. *Convoked*,—called *Well at his hands*,—a good treatment from him. *Choral songs*,—anthems ; symphonies *Of which account*,—to which he attached very great importance *Pledged*,—promised solemnly. *Give detractors ill*,—give an opportunity to my slanderers of blaming me *Would stand last*,—would be faithful to him and help him in his time of need, even up to the last moment of his life *Ill-disposed*,—unfavourably disposed. *Of his own accord*,—out of his own free will

**Page 171.** *Had it. Plutarch*,—if it had been written by some great native biographer like Plutarch, the celebrated Greek author of "*Lives of Illustrious Men*."

## CHAPTER IX.

**Page 172** *Starting-point*,—beginning *Recital*,—reproduction *Quietude*,—tranquillity. *Benignantly*,—mercifully.

**Page 173** *Recount*,—relate *Embarkation*,—getting on board the ships for his voyage, *Cruizing*,—sailing hither and thither for the capture of the enemy's ships *The Sacred trinity*,—God in his three different manifestations, viz, God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Ghost *Equinoctial line*,—the Equator, or the Great Circle of the heavens which, when the sun enters it, makes the days and the nights equal. (L *Æquus*, equal, and *nox*, night).

**Page 174** *A false name*,—a misnomer.

*The Cape Verde colour*,—"On the 27th of June, he arrived among the Cape de Verde Islands, which, instead of the freshness and verdure, which their name would betoken, presented an aspect of the most cheerless sterility"—*Irring*

*It might knife*,—this shows the density of the fog. cf. "*palpable darkness*" (Milton) *Encountered*, met with *The north star*,—the Northern Pole Star 'i e', the star which is vertical or nearly so, to the pole of the earth

The Northern Pole Star is of great use to navigators in the northern hemisphere. *The north star was in five degrees,—i e*, the altitude of the Pole Star was five degrees, as measured by the *Sextant*. *Intolerable,—unbearable. Like it,—so hot as the first day.*

The heat was intolerable.—“The air was like a furnace; the tar melted, the seams of the ship yawned, the salt meat became putrid, the wheat was parched as if with fire,...while the heat in the holds of the vessels was so suffocating that no one could remain below a sufficient time to prevent the damage that was taking place. The mariners lost all strength and spirits, and sunk under the oppressive heat. It seemed as if the old fable of the torrid zone was about to be realised; and that they were approaching a fiery region where it would be impossible to exist.”—*Irring*

*Sprang up,—began to blow gently.*

**Page 175.** *Temperature,—*the state of a body with regard to heat or cold as indicated by the thermometer. *Albatross,—*an aquatic fowl, belonging to the order of *Anseres*. It is sometimes called the *Great Gull Perched,—*sat, as if upon a pole or perch. *Fresh water,—*water not mixed with salt, which is used for drinking purpose. (*Opposed to Salt water*) *Aloft,—*on high. *Main top sail,—*the sail affixed to the top of the main-mast.

**Page 176** *Eminances,—*heights.

The “*Salve Regina*”—One of the most popular prayers in the Roman Catholic Church, addressed to the Blessed Virgin Mary, of which “*Salve Regina*” are the first words. It concludes with an earnest and tender appeal for the intercession of the Blessed Virgin with her Son, “that we may be made worthy of the promises of Christ”

*Pious hymns,—*religious songs of a devotional character. *Canticles,—*(*Lit*) little songs; songs.

**Page 177** “*La Galera,—i e*, the galley. **Complines,—**the last division of the Roman Catholic breviary, the last prayer at night, to be recited after sunset, so called, because, it closes the service of the day. ‘*The hour of complines,—i e*, the sunset; evening

**Page 178** *Nearcd,—*came near. *Verdure,—*(*Lit.* greenness) Freshness of vegetation. *Valencia,—*called “the

garden of Spain." *Shrunk*,—contracted **Caulking**—the process of driving oakum or old ropes untwisted, into the seams of a ship or other vessel, to prevent leaking or admitting water After the seams are filled, they are covered with hot, melted pitch or resin, to keep the oakum from rotting *Came to deep soundings*,—came to a part of the sea where the water was very deep *Soundings*,—measurements of the depth of water, taken constantly by a seaman, as the vessel advances

**Page 179** *Felicity*,—happiness *Greeted*,—pleased *A sure sign weather*,—trees could not have grown so luxuriantly and so close to the sea, had they been always struck against by the huge waves caused by the fury of the weather *Impetuosity*,—force *Contest*,—conflict *Ridge*,—a steep elevation or protuberance *Even to-day*,—even up to this time

**Page 180** *Shudder*,—tremble with fear or horror *Upset*,—overturned; capsized. *They*,—i. e., "waters," i. e., waves *Bow*,—the rounding part of the side of a ship forward beginning where the planks arch inward, and terminating where they close, at the stem or prow *To the sound of*,—keeping pace with the sound of *Tambourine*,—a shallow drum with only one skin, played on with the hand, and having bells at the sides *Answered*,—retorted *Flight*,—volley. *Projections*,—elongations, portions of land which came out into the sea *Indented*,—forked, of the form of teeth. (L *In* and *Dentis*, tooth)

**Page 181** *Bracelet*,—an ornament which goes round the wrist *Dwell upon*,—deal with, describe *But little kind*,—there was no time at his command which he could devote to investigation of any kind *See after*,—take care of *The stores*,—viz., of provisions, &c

**Page 182.** *Enter into*,—dwell upon. *Questions*,—theories *Observant man*,—man having a good power of observation *Cannot be attributed to chance*,—cannot be said to be owing to an accident *To define...discovery*,—To describe, in an exact chronological order, the series of thoughts which prompted Columbus to undertake this discovery.

*Compelling cause*,—impelling force *The change already alluded to*,—(See Text P 175, top) *Moment*,—importance

**Page 183** *Heavens*,—sky or firmament

**The magnetic current**,—"In order to explain the phenomena of magnetism, the existence of two hypothetical *magnetic fluids* has been assumed, each of which, acts repulsively on itself, but attracts the other fluid The fluid whose resultant effects predominate at the north pole of the magnet, is called the *north* or *boreal* fluid, and that at the south pole, the *south* or *austrial* fluid Sometimes the terms *positive* and *negative* are employed, corresponding to the north and south magnetisms" Ganot's *Physics*

*North-easting*,—deflecting or turning towards the points of N E in the compass *Upon the passage of the line*,—"On passing a line a hundred leagues west of the *Åzores*, &c" —(P 182 Text) *Pistachio nut*,—the nut of the *Pistacia Vera*, a kind of turpentine tree, containing a kernel of a pale greenish colour, of a pleasant taste, resembling that of the almond, and yielding a well-tasted oil It is wholesome and nutritive The tree grows in Syria, Arabia, Persia and also in Sicily. *पेस्ता* *That great heat*,—(See Text, P 174)

**Page 184** *Divining*,—foretelling, predicting. *On which to thread their observations*,—with which to connect or on which to base, their observations **And as few persons change in**,—as it is only those persons alone that, by their varied observation, have been able to increase considerably the number of well-known facts, wherefrom to deduce conclusions, by the inductive method of reasoning, should be allowed to claim the privilege of propounding theories of their own, so Columbus may justly be considered entitled to our serious attention, when he sets forth his theories and gives his own explanation of the phenomena of the wonderful change which took place in, &c *Struck his mind*,—arrested his attention *Moderate*,—mild.

**Page 185.** *Astute*,—(Gr *Astu* = a city Lat, *city-bred*) Shrewd, sly, ingenious *Meditated upon*,—pondered over. *Immense volume*,—vast quantity *The earthly Paradise*,—the Paradise on earth, the Garden of Eden, the original abode of Adam and Eve. See *Genesis, Ch II. 8—15. Reflection*,—meditation

One of the four great rivers *Paradise*.—"And the Lord God planted a garden eastward in Eden, and there he put the man whom he had formed And a river went out of Eden to water the garden, and from thence, it was parted, and became into *four* heads The name of the first *Pison*, that is it which compasseth the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold, And the name of the second river is *Gihon*; the same is it that compasseth the whole land of Ethiopia, and the name of the third river is *Hiddekel*, that is it which goeth toward the east of Assyria And the fourth river is *Euphrates* (See also Text, P. 127) *Genesis, II. 8, 10, 11, 13, 14*

*Being in despair whereabouts*,—being utterly hopeless in their efforts to make out near what quarter of the globe they were *The Devil*,—Satan *Unlearned*,—ignorant, illiterate *He fortified to*,—he made his position strong by citing the authority of.

**Page 186.** *Held stoutly to*,—strongly adhered to. *Head-land*,—point, cape *The religious aspect*,—the religious point of view, viz, that of converting the natives to Christianity, and thus of exalting the Church *If he*,—although he *They counted nothing*,—considered the expenditure only trifling

**Page 187.** *Stature*,—height. *Graceful bearing*,—amiable deportment *Indeed, the described*,—in fact, the account of a thing or man takes its particular character not simply from the nature of the thing or person described, but also from the nature and attitude of the person describing **Those little differences**.

**many minds**,—Those minor points of difference, in such petty matters as dress or outward appearance, which easily give rise to the sense of the ludicrous and a desire for mockery in the minds of uncultured persons—cramped, as they are, by narrow views due to a want of extensive travelling and illiberal ideas, appear, in fact, extremely insignificant to a high-souled man like Columbus or Las Casas, who has travelled extensively through many distant countries, and has had ample opportunity of studying various types of human mind, and thus of acquiring unlimited knowledge and wide sympathies.

**Page 188.** *The most accomplished man*,—the highly polished gentleman, viz, Columbus. **Occasionally, in**

**a conquer it**—Although it is seen, at times, that in the mind of a man of illiberal ideas and narrow sympathies, however highly accomplished he may be, the most ordinary prejudices preponderate over his good sense, yet it is a universal truth that real knowledge, based, as it is, upon wide sympathies and charitable views, sees through the subtle operations of biased hatred and prejudices, and is at the same time powerful enough to subdue and destroy their influence altogether upon the mind.

In "*knowledge sees behind and beyond disgust*," the idea seems to be a distant echo of the famous lines of Shakespeare, on *Discourse* or *Reason* in his "*Hamlet*"—"Sure He that made us with such large *discourse*, *Looking before and after*, gave us not that capability and godlike *reason* to fust in us unused "

*Makes a poor excuse for it*,—gives an explanation to justify himself, but it is not at all satisfactory *The fruits*,—the benefits *Might not from him*,—might not be taken away from him before he had profited by it *Disperse the intelligence*,—make the views widely known *The most tempting bait*,—the most attractive feature, the greatest allurements *To follow in the track of Columbus*,—imitate Columbus in pursuing the course of his voyages *Was to have foretaste*,—was to have enjoyed inadequately and obtained an insufficient idea of, which became very painful to him.

**Page 189.** *Inflammation*,—swelling and redness, attended with heat and pain *The grave but glowing enthusiast*,—Columbus, a quiet and sedate sort of man but possessed of a heart animated with burning zeal. *Vexed*,—worried *Small disputes*,—petty quarrels *Afflicted*,—troubled **Miseries the mere. hindered**,—vexations, which were all the more painful to him, because they were too petty for the magnanimity of a lofty soul like his, and for the noble aims and aspirations of his heart which were so sadly blasted by them Had his vexations been equal to his lofty mind and noble aspirations, Columbus might have obtained some consolation in being able to contend against them.

CHAPTER X.

**Page 190** *Far from cheering*,—far from encouraging, anything but satisfactory, *i e*, in an extremely deplorable condition *Defection*,—desertion; revolt (from duty or allegiance) *Agreement*,—reconciliation. *Amity*,—friendliness

**Page 191** *Personal services*,—services in the shape of physical labour. *Enters into . . transactions*,—dwells at some length upon the subject of the profits in the shape of money that will accrue from these dealings in slave-trade *Logwood*,—a heavy kind of wood, of a deep red colour internally, and very extensively used as a dye-wood *As sale could be found for in Spain*,—as the market of Spain would demand, as could be conveniently sold in Spain *Certain*,—sure, unimpeachable. *Forty cuentos*,—*i e*, forty million *maravedis*, equivalent to about £12,345. *After the dealer*,—exactly in the manner of an experienced dealer in slaves

**Page 192** *Mother country*,—Spain, which stood in the relation of a mother to the colony. *Cf metropolis*,—mother city. *Pay for their maintenance*,—bear the expenses of supporting them *They might stand in need of*,—they might require *To make use of*,—to avail themselves of the benefit of.

**Page 193.** *Was brought to a close*,—was terminated. *It brings to mind*,—it reminds one of *Contending against*,—quarrelling with *The latter*,—*viz*, the "small powers" *Sacrificed*,—destroyed *Came to*,—amounted to, was tantamount to *Shoots*,—young plants *Till*,—cultivate *Utmost development*,—perfect growth

**Page 194** *Was in the . . angered*,—was extremely enraged *Vassals*,—subjects, *viz*, the Indians *Proclamation*,—public declaration *Under pain of death*,—subject to the penalty of death

**Page 195** *The learned*,—doctors *Whether by the . . canonists*,—see Text, pp 153–54, and 160 *In some us*,—to a certain extent, unaccountable, at least, from the facts and materials that have been handed down to us *Whom no*



one *craft*,—who has never been found guilty, by any one, of stooping so low as to take to the crooked and insincere ways of politicians or diplomatists *The crown was favoured*,—the sovereigns were exempted from the operation of the present declaration. *Legitimacy*,—propriety *The wording is rather obscure*,—the language is somewhat vague *For them*,—for their use or benefit.

**Page 196** *To have gone to the root of the matter*,—to have gone to the bottom or essence of the question, *i e*, to have been genuine *To return to*,—let us resume the thread of the narrative of *That so*,—perhaps a misprint for “*so that*.” *Concern*,—anxiety. *Real*,—a small Spanish denomination of money *The real of plate* varies in value according to the time of its coinage, from 12½ down to 10 cents, or from 6½ to 5 pence sterling *The real vellon* is a money of account equal to 5 cents, or 2½ pence sterling *Now there and . Cathay*,—now that he had been able to bring the affairs of the colony to a pretty satisfactory condition, he obtained leisure enough to allow him to ponder over the fondly cherished aims of his life, *viz*, the rebuilding of the sanctuary at Jerusalem, or the conversion of the people of Cathay, the subjects of the Grand Khan, to Christianity (See Text, pp 72 and 93) *Prolonged quiet*,—continued rest *Such great adventures*,—such great and hazardous enterprises, *viz*, another crusade, and conversion of Cathay *The staple of his high thoughts*,—the principal food for his lofty aspirations, *i e*, the principal means of keeping his noble aims alive **Which poured.** . **his life**,—which embittered the remaining portion of his life **Aloe**,—(a Hebrew word)—a very bitter plant, hence the proverb —“*Plus aloes quam mellis habet*,”=(life) has more bitters than sweets **The juice of aloes**,—is a stimulant stomachic purgative, very bitter and disagreeable in taste, hence, metaphorically, the bitters or miseries of life

N B—The quotation, *viz*, “poured the &c., life”—comes from the work of the Spanish historian Munoz Helps elsewhere says—“These are the last printed words of Munoz’s History and

they are somewhat ominous of the fate of the excellent historian himself "

**Page 197.** *Vivid picture*,—graphic account. *Preferred*,—brought *Unseemly*,—improper, unbecoming *Kept*,—went on, continued *Effrontery*,—impertinence, insolence *To the very heavens*,—i e, very loudly *Mosquito land*,—Mark, the sarcasm But there actually is a district of Central America on the shore of the Caribbean Sea, called *Mosquitia* or *Mosquito Coast*

**Page 198.** *A place of sepulchre*,—i e, a burial-ground *On which account*,—for which reason *Excused ourselves*,—avoided by some sort of pretext or other. *Unjust clamour*,—loud and unmerited accusations *Constant stream*,—(stript of metaphor)—uninterrupted series. *Some day or other*,—sooner or later. *Rush in upon him*,—come down upon, and overwhelm, him *Suspending*,—preventing him from holding his office for some time *Transmitted*,—sent *But if*,—but although *The civil authority*,—i e, the administrative power, as Governor

**Page 199.** *Acted upon*,—carried into execution. *Raised themselves*,—revolted, rebelled *Proceed against them*,—adopt punitive measures against them

**Page 200.** *Dubious*,—uncertain *Coarse way*,—rude manner *Pity*,—matter of regret. *A sad judgment*,—a pitiable case of wrong decision *Fixed upon* . . . *agent*,—selected him as their representative *Met with*,—come across *Narrowness*,—illiberal ideas. *High-principled*,—of good moral principle or rectitude *Direct*,—straightforward *And whose people*,—whose untested good name as an honest man has won him much popularity and admiration *Placed in power*,—being vested with authority *Shows*,—actually proves *That to rule a person*,—that in order to attain success in administration, the governor must never betray any the least sign of partiality and prejudice *Notoriety*,—state of being widely known to disadvantage *Colossal blunder*.—egregious mistake or folly (*Colossal*, an adjective formed from *Colossus*, for which, read notes on P. 37)

**Page 201.** *Stupid brutality*,—inhuman, outrage proceeding from foolishness. *Took for*,—erroneously con-

sidered as. *Abetted*,—helped and encouraged *Came thickly*,—were made in large numbers, came pouring in *The stones brothers*,—this is a hyperbolical way of saying that, the entire body of the colonists, without any single exception, assumed a hostile attitude towards him and his brothers *Cf —*

“ Put a tongue

In every word of Cæsar, that should move

*The stones of Rome to rise and mutiny ”*

Shakespeare,—*Julius Cæsar* Peck,—the fourth part of a bushel, eight quarts

**Page 202.** *Unlikely*,—improbable *Some man in religious orders*,—some clergyman *From the other side of the water*,—from the other side of the Atlantic, *i e*, from Spain *This does report*,—this fully confirms or substantiates the report *Had to do with*,—was concerned in *If so, it speaks matter*,—if it at all be a fact that the sovereigns of Spain were led to suspend Columbus on account of his alleged ill-treatment of the Indians, then it furnishes, no doubt, a highly creditable testimony to the excellent motives and continued sympathetic attitude of the sovereigns to the dumb and down-trodden millions on the other side of the Atlantic *His chains upon him*,—his fetters appeared very painful to him, considering the numerous valuable services he had rendered to the crown of Spain and the ingratitude of the sovereigns *I always, &c.—i e*, even after he had been set free. *He did not know coming misery*,—in this passage, Helps draws a comparison and contrast between the miseries of Columbus and those of the poor Indians who were thereafter to be sold as slaves *Traverse those seas*,—cross the Atlantic *In bonds much worse than his*,—in captivity far more painful than his, the weight of chains was heavier in case of the Indians, not simply for their actual painful fettered condition, but also for the immediate prospect of their being sold as slaves. *Nor did he foresee misery*,—nor did he anticipate that some of his own actions would, in a manner, lead to, if not actually bring about, all this present suffering

**Page 203.** *In these chains .. Indies,—*Columbus the captive affords us a greater interest than Columbus the Governor of the Indies. **For so it is most for,—**Because thus it is an irony of fate, as it were, that the people of future generations sometimes eagerly look, to the most unhappy period of a man's career and love him too most dearly for it

(*N. B*—Take the example, besides that of Columbus, of Sociates, the greatest man of ancient Greece His very sufferings afford us a greater interest than anything else in him Whenever we think of Socrates, the picture of his unjust trial and death comes uppermost in our mind ) *Posterity,—*people of future generations *This very thought ..him,—*this very thought that although he was not appreciated by his own contemporaries, yet people of future generations would highly value his noble services to humanity, may have solaced him and borne him up against his present portion of misery *But happily deserted him,—*but fortunately for him, his religious sentiments, and aspirations which he cherished so fondly in his heart, never forsook him even for a moment and now became a great source of his comfort

Columbus himself says.—

"Hope in Him who created all men sustains me ; His succour was always very speedy At another time, and not long ago, when I was lower still, He raised me with His divine arm, saying,—'O man of little faith, arise, it is I, be not afraid.' " From *Navarrete*

*Whatever we may . policy,—*whatever opinion we may form of the general principle of his administration, *i e*, we may either support him or we may condemn him *We cannot but regret,—*we cannot help expressing sorrow for *Chance . government,—*prospect of order, harmony, and compactness in his administration *Honestly admit,—*sincerely confess *With such . before them,—*on the face of such palpable proofs which were brought to the notice of the sovereigns, and which went a great way against Columbus *Were far from wrong,—*did not at all act unjustly. *Had it been greatness,—*provided it were done in a way befitting the dignity of both the sovereigns and of Columbus.

## CHAPTER XI.

**Page 204.** *Marked by strong contrasts*,—characterised by strikingly contrary or dissimilar events "*Pauper pilot*,"—see Text, P 77. *Despondent*,—hopeless *Stand out* each other, —arrest our attention as conspicuously contrary to each other *Idol of popular favour*,—object of unbounded admiration of the people; darling of the people *Insidious maligners*,—treacherous defamers *In truth, the contrast* people, —in reality the dissimilitude was so conspicuous that it was keenly felt even by the people at large in the depths of their heart

**Page 205.** *Broad*,—plain *Spain loaded* *return*,—Spain, in exchange for the manifold benefit received from him, imprisoned and enchained him *There was a favour*,—a reaction set in, an opposite force began to operate The stream of popular opinion began to be diverted in his favour *Repudiated*,—disavowed, disapproved *Arbitrary proceedings*,—despotic measures *Under their commission*,—on the strength of the authority of their investing him with power *One of them*,—viz, Ferdinand *Wise*,—(manner) way

**Page 206.** *Concession*,—favour *Within his grasp*, —at his command *Throw off his allegiance*,—refuse to submit to the authority of the sovereigns *Without any flagrant breach of faith*,—without any glaring piece of injustice, and open violation of an agreement already entered into *Of eluding the bargain*,—evading the contract as to the participation of the profit and loss of the new undertaking *On very plausible grounds of policy*,—on the apparently reasonable ground of a political principle, viz, on the ground of keeping up appearances at least in the matter of doing justice and giving satisfaction to the people thereby *Reinstate in his viceroyalty*,—reappoint him to his office of viceroy *Acquiesce*—consent to *Take the reins of government*,—assume the charge of administering affairs as Governor *He told his story*,—he gave his own explanation *So pathetically*, —in such a pity-exciting manner *To have been recital*, —to have been so excited as to have shed tears when

Columbus's version of the story was being given by him before her. *Machinations*,—intrigues

**Page 207.** *To create himself*,—to hit upon an entirely novel mode of proceeding for his own guidance *Having to deal with*,—it being his lot to cope with *Precedent*,—authority. *Were prompted in fact*,—owed their origin to the workings of those persons whose high hopes were frustrated and of his enemies who had always been jealous of him for his growing influence, and that they were based upon no real incidents *Fully appreciated his services*,—adequately realised the merit of the valuable services which he had rendered to the state *Rancour*,—deep-seated malice *Infant*,—new. *Express*,—explicit *As your ill-fortune willed it*,—as your ill-luck would have it. *Breach*,—violation

**Page 208.** *Overstepping*,—going beyond the limits of *To relieve you of the government*,—to take over the charge of the administration from you. *Stewardship*,—(Lit) The office of a steward, or one who manages the domestic concerns of a great family; (here) governorship *Commission*,—the authority of the office he was appointed to *Agent*,—representative. *To make an example of*,—to inflict an exemplary punishment upon, (to punish in such a way as to give a warning to others not to commit the same offence). *Exceed*,—go beyond, overstep *Inflamed*,—extremely enraged *Must have time to cool*,—must take some time to have the fury of their anger abated *You must bide your time*,—you must wait till the fullness of your time *Expiration*,—close, termination.

**Page 209.** *Term*,—period *Was forthwith to be superseded*,—was immediately to be displaced or unseated **If Columbus had chastised scorpions.**—The wrongs and injuries inflicted by Columbus upon the Indians were far lighter than those inflicted by Bobadilla. This is an adaptation of a Biblical expression *Scorpion*, is used, in the Bible, in the sense of a painful scourge, a kind of whip armed with metallic points or knotted cords.

*Cf* "And now whereas my father did lade you with a heavy yoke, I will add to your yoke; my father has chastised you with whips, but I will chastise you with scorpions" *I Kings XII 11 14*, also, *II Chronicles, X 11 14*.

**The purport** is this —If Columbus was to be regarded as to have dealt harshly with the Indians, Bobadilla was then to be pronounced as having acted most tyrannically towards them *Census*,—an enumeration of the inhabitants of a state or country, taken by order of the legislature *A large proportion .. prisons*,—the majority of the colonists were criminals of the worst type, who were transported to the Indies and whom the prisons of Spain had accordingly got rid of *Brutality*,—inhuman cruelty. *Wretched helots*,—miserable slaves (*Helots* were slaves in ancient Sparta) *Amount of pressure employed*,—degree of force or coercion applied *Royalty*,—(Lit royal prerogative) That share of some mineral found in a mine, or money equivalent thereto, which is due to the sovereign

**Page 210.** *Vermillion coloured*,—of a deep red colour. *Vermillion*,—(L. *Vermiculus*, a little worm, diminutive of *vermis*, worm) scarlet colour, so named, because obtained from a little worm or grub, found in a certain plant. (सिन्दूर) *Hardly conveys much to our minds*,—scarcely produces any distinct impression on our minds *Held in much aversion*,—hated from the bottom of his heart. *Commendador Mayor*,—the Great Commander, Grand Master

**The Order of Alcantara** —Formerly the Order of St Julian, one of the religious orders of Spanish knighthood, was founded (1156) as a military fraternity for the defence of Estremadura against the Moors. In 1197 Pope Celestine III. raised it to the rank of a religious order of knighthood, bestowed great privileges on it, and charged it with the defence of the Christian faith, and the maintenance of eternal war with the infidel. Alphonso IX. having taken the town of Alcantara ceded it in 1218 to the Order of Calatrava, but the knights of this order, unable to hold it along with their other great possessions, yielded it to the Knights of St Julian, who transferred to it their seat, and henceforth were

known by its name At length the Grand Mastership of the Order was, by Pope Alexander VI, united to the Spanish Crown in 1495.

*Alcantara*,—an old fortified Spanish town, built by the Moors in the province of Estremadura

**Page 211.** *Unmolested*,—undisturbed or uninjured  
*Replace*,—occupy their place *To start afresh*,—to begin anew

**Page 212** *Permits*,—written licenses or permissions from an officer of the customs to transport goods from one place to another, showing the duty on them to, have been paid. *Notice*,—mention **Ordeal**,—severe trial or accurate scrutiny (originally, a form of trial among the ancient rude nations of Europe, to determine guilt or innocence, by fire or water.) *To which office*,—which high officials had to undergo, when going to be superseded by their successors in office *Impeachment*,—accusation, a calling in question the purity of motives, or the rectitude of conduct, &c *Restitution*,—restoring, act of making good or of giving an equivalent for any loss, damage or injury. *Formal*,—strictly ceremonious; agreeable to established mode

**Page 213** *Didactic*,—Moral *A great master of that art*,—a person well-skilled in that subject. *Cabinet*,—a private room, in which consultations are held. *Discourse*,—lecture *Before*,—above, in preference to. *Look to*,—provide for *Put into*,—appoint to *Authority in the hands of*,—power at the disposal of. *Nodded approvingly*,—shook his head as a sign of approval. *To the diminution of*,—so as to decrease. *Skilful in affairs*,—dexterous in managing business. *Use moderation*,—be reasonably lenient. *Over-taxing the people*,—imposing a tax upon the people which is too heavy for their means,—or the payment of which is beyond their means. *Furthered*,—backed, helped or advanced forward. *Were within due bounds*,—did not exceed reasonable limits

**Page 214.** *Frugal way*,—economical style *Make himself judge in a cause*,—constitute himself a judge in



a case,—(which is a departure from the ordinary procedure, and an encroachment upon the judicial department) *Culprits*,—persons guilty, offenders *In the ordinary way*,—according to the usual procedure *Aphorism*,—a precise and pithy saying, or sentence expressed in a few words *To the purpose*,—to the point, precise *Tale-bearers*,—persons who officiously tell lies, informers Those that impertinently communicate intelligence or anecdotes, and thereby make mischief in society *Ugly*,—preposterous, absurd *Speak ill of*,—slander *To give heed to*,—to pay attention to *To take ill that*,—to take offence for that *Rather let magnanimity*,—it is better to show oneself above the malicious remarks of slanderers by passing them over nobly and not by trying to check them by punishing the offenders *To give free audience to all*,—to allow every one to come to his presence *Counsel turned out ill*,—advice happened to be unfavourable *To look cold upon them for that*,—to treat them indifferently for that reason, viz, for the unfavourableness of their advice or suggestion

**Page 215** *Agents*,—assistants *Calumny for success*,—blame, (which is prompted by jealousy) for creditably doing something (for which he deserves praise rather than blame) *That his own practice matter*,—that his own usual conduct in such cases, was, on no account, in conformity with his own ideal standard of a perfectly noble and wise principle in the matter *In deed*,—practically *Even those* *disesteem him*,—even his own imitators or followers, in that particular wrong act, would disregard him at heart in the same way as others would do *To know the life of every one*,—to know how people generally lead their lives, &c, whether honestly or dishonestly *Over-inquisitive*,—curious beyond proper limit *Rout up*,—search, hunt up *Which are* *officially*,—which are not brought to his notice through a proper official channel *Looked into*,—taken notice of, noticed. *In excess*,—too severely *Give way* .. *impulses*,—yield to their evil propensities

**Page 216** *Liberality*,—munificence, disposition to give freely and largely. *He was to govern* *be governed*,—

He was to rule others in so just and benignant a manner as he himself would like to be ruled by.

Note, that this precept is an adaptation of the golden rule of the Bible —

"Therefore all things whatsoever ye would that men should do to you, do ye even so to them for this is the law and the prophets"—*Matthew, VII 12*

"And as ye would that men should do to you, do ye also to them likewise"—*Luke, VI 31.*

*It behoved him,*—it befitted him *Intent,*—earnest. *Management,*—tact *Brevity* . *determinations,*—promptness in carrying out useful resolves. (Oppd to procrastination) *Carried away by,*—under the influence of *Good counsel,*—sober deliberation or examination of consequences *Considering upon him,*—pondering over the gravity of the responsibility he is under *Heed,*—care *For dealing offence,*—for disposing of an offence summarily *Should have swift recourse to,*—should speedily resort to *The remedy thunderbolt,*—the remedial measure in the shape of punishment should be so promptly adopted that it may appear unexpected and completely crushing to the person concerned

**Page 217.** *Questioned,*—doubted. *Occur to,*—strike

**Machiavelli's "Prince,"**—The main question discussed in this world-famed book is —"How principalities may be governed and maintained?" In resolving this question various cases are supposed, for each of which, appropriate rules, principles and suggestions are laid down The 7th Chapter and the 18th, in which the author discusses "the duty of princes as to the obligation of keeping faith" are perhaps those which have most contributed to draw upon him the odious reputation of which his very name has become the symbol, but the broad scheme of the book is everywhere the same, viz, that, for the establishment and maintenance of authority, all means may be resorted to, and that the worst and the most treacherous acts of the ruler, however unlawful in themselves, are justified by the wickedness and treachery of the governed Hence, the word **Machiavellism**, is used to denote that system of policy which disregards every law, human or divine, to effect its purposes, or in other words, political cunning and overreaching by diplomacy, according to the pernicious political principles of Niccolo del Machiavelli of Florence, set forth in his work, called **The Prince**.

*Much-abused*,—severely condemned by all, as it contains some pernicious political principles *Manual*,—hand-book, treatise *Crafty*,—cunning, artful. *Statesmen*,—politicians, diplomatists

It was about 12 years' work—This interview took place in 1501, when these instructions were given to Ovando, (*See Text P 212, Para 3*) and 12 years after this, that is in 1513, Machiavelli wrote a letter to his friend Vettori, in which he referred to his "*Prince*" as a small unpublished work. This important letter discovered only in 1810, shews that the "*Prince*" was written in all seriousness, by Machiavelli in order to recommend himself to the Medici (for whose private perusal the book was designed and not for publication) as a master in the art of government, and disproves the most favourite theory of the greatest scholars of the time that the "*Prince*" was but a satire upon absolutism and was designed to serve the cause of liberty, of which Machiavelli was an ardent friend, by making arbitrary power odious and contemptible. The following is a passage from the "*Prince*":—

"A prudent Prince neither can, nor ought to keep his word, when to keep it is hurtful, and the causes, which led him to pledge it, are removed. If all men were good, this would not be good advice, but since they are wicked and do not keep faith with you, in return, need not keep faith with them, and no Prince need ever be at a loss for plausible reasons to cloak a breach of faith—*The Prince Ch VIII*

*Charged*,—being entrusted with *Foundered*,—was filled with water and sank *Entered at once upon*,—immediately took in hand *Commissioned to institute*,—deputed to bring about.

**Page 218** "*Residencia*,"—see Text, P. 212, para 9 *Placed Roldan under arrest*,—issued a process or warrant against Roldan to seize him *Like Bobadilla*, order,—Ovando was a knight and Grand Master of the Order of Alcantara, (*See Text, P 210*), while Bobadilla was "*a commander of the military and religious Order of Calatrava*"—(*Irving*). *Narrow way things*,—illiberal way of forming opinions of things. *Presented to*,—proved to be just the opposite of. *Large-minded*,—magnanimous, high-souled. **And so, whereas a rod of iron**,—Such being the difference between them

in point of character and disposition, Columbus had always treated the natives with charity, kindness, and a respect for their feelings, while, on the other hand, Ovando soon began to govern them with an extreme degree of despotism and severity. **To rule with a rod of iron**,—to govern harshly, severely and tyrannically. It is a Biblical phrase.—

“ And he shall rule them with a rod of iron ; as the vessels of a potter shall they be broken to shivers ; even as I received of my Father ”—*Revelation, II 27*

*Linger too long over*,—stop for a while in order to dwell upon at some length *Episode*,—(Lit) a separate incident, story or action, introduced for the purpose of giving a greater variety to the events related in a poem, hence, an incidental narrative or digression *Which it is . recount*,—to relate which is worth our while (time) or trouble it requires *Stand out in brighter relief*,—present a stronger contrast to that of Ovando and appear the more conspicuous as being set to advantage *Anacrona*,—see Text, page 163 *Good manners*,—polished manners or etiquette

**Page 219** *Pleasant address*,—agreeable dexterity or skilful management *To play the hostess*,—to discharge the duties of a hostess or a lady who entertains guests *The lieutenant*,—the Adelantado *Maskings*,—Revellings in masks, or sportive covers for the face *Wrestling*,—an athletic exercise between two persons who try to throw each other down *Trying of masteries*,—attempts at showing superiority in competition, eminent skill or superior dexterity *Men of war*,—warriors or fighting men, not to be confounded with the compound word *men-of-war*, which means, ships of war. *Pastime*,—that which amuses and serves to make *time pass* agreeably, entertainment, amusement *With their banners spread*,—having their flags unfurled, &c, in all seriousness, or in right earnest

**Page 220** *Sarcastic*,—ironical *They lived Roldan*,—in an unruly manner *Adversaries*,—enemies, antagonists

**Page 221.** *Feudatories*,—vassals (under her protection) *Concourse*,—crowd *Soothing*,—pacifying the anger of *At hand*,—in close proximity. *Seemingly wise arguments*,—apparently reasonable arguments, plausible, or sophistical arguments. *Of*,—prompted by *Time immemorial*,—time out of mind *Originated and perpetuated*,—given rise to, and made eternal *Using all those treachery*,—this may refer to the plausible arguments with which Satan, the chief adversary of man, under the form of a serpent, tempted Eve in the Garden of Eden to taste the fruit of the *forbidden tree* and thus first introduced treachery into this world that brought about the fall of man

The Great Serpent said to Eve —

"Ye shall not surely die For God doth know that in the day ye eat thereof then your eyes shall be opened and ye shall be as gods, knowing good and evil"—*Genesis, III 4, 5*

*Or he . . . this way*,—otherwise he would scarcely have taken so much trouble in travelling this great distance

**Page 222** *Tournament*,—a martial sport or species of combat, performed in former times by knights and cavaliers, on horseback, for the purpose of exercising and exhibiting their courage, prowess, and skill in arms *Action*,—engagement, fight **A Tiberius in dissembling**,—Well-skilled in the art of concealing his wicked motives under the garb of goodness, like Tiberius Claudius Nero the Roman Emperor, who, in his early years, commanded popularity by hypocrisy and a state of profound dissimulation Hence Tiberius has been nicknamed, "*The Imperial Machiavelli*" His political maxim was—"He who knows not how to dissemble knows not how to reign" Goldsmith, in his *History of Rome*, writes—"Tiberius was 56 years old when he took upon him the government of the Roman empire. He had lived in a state of profound dissimulation under Augustus, and was not yet hardy enough to show himself in his real character" *Quoit*,—circular ring or piece of iron to be pitched or thrown at a fixed object in play In common practice, a plain, flat stone is used for this purpose **The badge of knighthood**,—the dis-

tinctive sign of his Knighthood, and Grand Mastership of the Order of Alcantara. The badge consisted of a green cross cut out in the form of lilies upon the left breast of the mantle, and another cross with the same symbol mounted on a silver ground *His breast,—viz.,* the left side of his breast *Fell out,—*happened

**Page 223. Humanity does not gain much. .**  
**right to,**—men in general do not materially profit by Ovando's "never allowing himself to be addressed by the title of "Lordship," which really belonged to his office, and to the use of which he had a just right; but it would have been a far greater gain to them, if he had shown a little charity in his proceedings, and banished barbarity from them, or in other words, charity and a good use of his power would have been far more welcome to mankind than the feigned humility and mock-modesty which he had shown in his acts by not allowing himself to be addressed by the title of "Lordship," which belonged to his office of Grand Master of the Order of Alcantara and which he could therefore lay a just claim to (See text P 210)

**A modern Chronicler,**—a modern historian, *viz.,* **Captain Southey,** in his "*History of the West Indies*" Vol I P. 93 *Arms,*—ensigns armorial. **A dove...**, **rainbow, and a cross,**—all these are emblems of peace and good luck after serious misfortunes **A dove with olive branch,**—Noah, from his "Ark," sent forth a dove to ascertain if the waters of the great flood were dried up from off the face of the earth, at first, the bird finding no rest, returned to the Ark, but after seven days, it was again sent forth, and this time, it came back with **an olive branch** plucked off in its mouth. So Noah knew that the waters were abated from off the earth, and that the hardships and miseries caused by the flood were at an end

"And it came to pass at the end of forty days that Noah opened the window of the ark which he had made. He sent forth a dove from him to see if the waters were abated from off the face of the ground, but the dove found no rest for the sole

of her foot, and she returned unto him into the ark. And he stayed yet other seven days, and sent forth the dove out of the ark; and the dove came in to him in the evening, and lo, in her mouth was an olive leaf plucked off. So Noah knew that the waters were abated from off the earth"—*Genesis, VIII. 6, 8, 10, 11, 12*

**A rainbow**,—the figure of a rain-bow. It was a symbol of God's covenant with man that there would no longer be any flood to destroy the creatures of this earth

"And God spake unto Noah and to his sons with him, saying—And I, behold, I establish my covenant with you and with your seed after you. I do set my bow in the cloud, and it shall be for a token of a covenant between me and the earth. And I will remember my covenant, which is between me and you, and every living creature of all flesh, and the waters shall no more become a flood to destroy all flesh."—*Genesis, IX, 8, 9, 13, 14*

**A cross**,—the figure of a cross, or a gibbet consisting of two pieces of timber placed across each other, either in form of a T or x or somewhat like plus sign +, that on which Christ suffered, hence, emblematic of Christ's sufferings, and of the atonement and salvation of man after his fall through Christ. **Aceldama**,—(A Hebrew word)—This is quoted from the Bible —

"And it was known unto all the dwellers at Jerusalem, inasmuch as that field is called in their proper tongue, Aceldama that is to say, the field of blood"—*Acts I 19*

**I observe that the a cross**,—It is worth noticing that by assigning all the symbols of peace, (namely, a dove with an olive branch, a rainbow, and a cross) as armorial ensigns to this so-called "city of the true peace," but which really deserved the name of "the field of blood," Olando perpetrated an outrage and a grim mockery upon all decency and propriety. *Chafing*,—murmuring, as a sign of discontent

**Page 224** *Reap a large profit*,—i. e., reap a good harvest, i. e., make a rich source of gain. *Equipment*,—fitting out. *Calculated*,—suited. *Soothe*,—pacify.

**Page 225** *Chivalrous love of adventure*,—a noble and romantic fondness for undertaking a bold and hazardous enterprise. *Quite voluntarily*,—purely out of his own accord. *The siege had been raised*,—the besieging

army was removed and the attempt to take the city by that mode of attack was relinquished *Called into requisition*,—demanded; required. *Interdicted*,—prohibited (*Interdict*,—(Lit.)—a papal prohibition by which persons are restrained from attending divine service and prevented from enjoying some privileges) *Sea-worthy*,—in a proper condition to perform a voyage.

**Page 226.** *Contingency*,—accident; casualty, chance. *To an eye ....changes*,—to a person not habituated to observe the changes of weather in the tropical regions. *Ripple*,—gentle wave. *Breath*, a slight motion of the air. *Luxuriant foliage*,—rich and dense collection of leaves. *Repulsed*,—rejected *Wrung out of*,—squeezed out of; i. e., extorted from *Harsh measures*,—severe or rigorous steps. *Nugget*,—lump (of metal or ore) *In the most glowing terms*,—most enthusiastically; in a language of the highest praise. *Virgin gold*,—gold in the form of ore, and not yet wrought. *Listlessly*,—carelessly; heedlessly; indifferently. *Rake*,—an instrument with teeth and a handle, by which light bodies are gathered up, or the earth divided *To and fro*,—(the same as, *to and from*) Backwards and forwards. *Roast*,—roasted, or dressed by exposure to heat, on a spit.

**Page 227.** *Shipped it*,—deposited it on board a ship to be sent. *Treasure*,—valuable articles. *Valuable enough ..... on the new colony*,—sufficiently precious to cover, by way of making up for the loss of, a large part of the expenditure incurred by the sovereigns towards the establishment and management of the new settlement. *Became terribly verified*,—proved not only true, but also was attended with much loss to the people. *Tornado*,—terrible tempest. *Unexampled*,—uncommon; unprecedented, rare *Were levelled with the ground*,—were brought down upon the surface of the ground. *Dire*,—terrible. *Foundered at sea*,—were filled with water and went down into the sea.

**Page 228.** *Associates*,—companions; accomplices. *Ill-gotten gains*,—profits obtained by unfair means.

The following scene from Shakespeare's *Troilus and*



*Cressida* will give the student some idea, of, how the predictions of *Cassandra* were disregarded —

*Cassandra* — "Where is my brother *Hector* ?

*Hector* — "Ho ! bid my trumpet sound !

*Cass* — "No notes of sally, for the heavens, sweet brother,

*Hect* — Begone, I say, the gods have heard me swear

*Cass* — The gods are deaf to hot and peevish vows —

*Hect* — Hold you still, I say

Mine honour keeps the weather of my fate  
Life every man holds dear, but the dear man  
Holds honour more precious dear than life

(Exit *Cassandra*)

(Re-enter *Cassandra* with *Priam*)

*Cass* — Lay hold upon him, *Priam*, hold him fast,  
He is thy crutch, now if thou lose thy stay,  
Thou on him leaning, and all *Troy* on thee,  
Fall all together.

*Priam*. — Come, *Hector*, come, go back.  
Thy wife hath dream'd thy mother hath had  
visions,  
*Cassandra* doth foresee, and I myself  
Am like a prophet suddenly enrapt  
To tell thee, that this day is ominous.  
Therefore, come back.

*Hect* — I must not break my faith  
You know me dutiful, therefore, dear sir,  
Let me not shame respect, but give me leave  
To take that course by your consent and voice,  
Which you do here forbid me, loyal *Priam*.

*Cass* — O farewell, dear *Hector*  
Look how thou diest ! look how thy eye turns pale  
Look how thy wounds do bleed at many vents !  
Hark, how *Troy* roars ! how *Hecuba* cries out !  
How poor *Andromache* shrills her dolours forth !  
Behold destruction, frenzy and amazement,  
Like witless anticks, one another meet,  
And all cry — *Hector* ! *Hector*'s dead ! O *Hector* !

— *Shakespeare, Troilus and Cressida, Act. V. Sc. III.*

**Like *Cassandra* had foretold, —** Like *Cassandra*,  
*Columbus* saw the disappointment of those who placed no

confidence in his prophecy; (i.e. of the followers of Ovando whom Columbus informed beforehand of the approach of a tempest, but who disregarded his prediction); and as Cassandra was denied the special privileges of personal safety in a temple, on the occasion of the fall of Troy—an event which she had long foretold, so Columbus was not allowed by Ovando to avail himself of the benefit of giving shelter to his disabled ships in the harbour of St Domingo, on the outbreak of a terrible tornado, which he himself had prophesied. *Under the lee of the land*,—near the shore, which breaks the force of the wind. *Came on*,—approached. *Keys*,—ledges, or lays of rocks near the surface of the water. *The Queen's Garden*,—see Text P. 142.

**Page 229.** *Clamour*,—loudly complain. *Amounted to insubordination*,—rose to the extent of defiance of authority. *Broke out*,—manifested itself and assumed the form of. *Beating about*,—tossing here and there near. *Pine-clad slopes*,—slanting surfaces of land covered all over with pine-trees. *Fabrics*,—articles manufactured. *Iron wood swords*,—swords made of iron-wood, which is a very hard kind of wood, of some species of a genus of trees called *Sideroxylon*. *Flint knives*,—rude implements made of sharpened flints used by savages as knives. *Cacao*,—fruit of the chocolate-tree, a species of *Theobroma*, a native of the West Indies. This tree grows about 20 feet high, bearing pods which are oval and pointed. The nuts or seeds are numerous, and lodged in a white, pithy substance.

**Page 230.** *Beverage*,—any pleasant drink. *Impassive*,—not susceptible of pain or suffering. *To repress all novelties*,—to check all outward signs of wonder even at the sight of strikingly new things.

**Page 231.** *In pursuance of*,—following. *His evil destiny*,—the idea comes from the Greek notion of a *Dæmon* or *Genius*—a kind of spirit supposed to preside over the actions of mankind, giving them their private counsels, and carefully watching over their most secret intentions. Some of the ancient philosophers maintained that every man had two of these *Dæmons*—the one bad, and the other good. At the moment of death, the *Dæmon* delivered up

the person to judgment, and sentence was passed over the dead man according to the evidence of his Dæmon. **But this savage like ..... fortune,**—but this savage, like his evil Genius, thwarted his good fortune just at the juncture, and made him deviate from a path which would certainly have led him to prosperity. *Gracias a Dios*,—(Lit.) God's Grace. *Moor his vessels*,—secure his vessels in a particular station as by cables, and anchors, chains or fixed objects, under water. *Artillery*,—offensive and defensive weapons of war chiefly, cannon, ordnance, and their appendages. *Thunder*,—thunderous or loud report. *Lightning*,—flashes of fire.

**Page 232. Notary**,—an officer authorized to protest notes, &c, and attest contracts or writings of any kind, to give them the evidence of authenticity. *Operation*,—process. *Spell*,—charm. *Magic effect*,—miraculous effect. *Neutralize*,—counteract. *Mystic fumigation*,—a strange process of applying smoke or gas to purify some evil influence, which was beyond the comprehension of others. *Counter-charm*,—a spell having the power of counteracting or neutralising another spell. *Sorcerers*,—magicians, wizards. *Forcing itself upon him*,—arresting his attention. *Prosecution*,—following up; steady continuance. *Waterspout*,—a conical pillar of water, descending from a dense cloud, and having the apex downwards. It is a meteorological phenomenon. *Engulph*,—or engulf—swallow up

**Page 233. Phosphorescent floods**,—particles of water, with a faint light, or luminousness, unaccompanied with sensible heat. The phenomenon is exhibited by certain animals, as well as by vegetable and mineral substances

"In our temperate climates, and in that region of the Atlantic which extends between the English and French coasts, we see the ocean phosphorescent only in summer, and in seasons of great warmth and tranquillity."—"Mysteries of the Ocean"

*Tropical cyclone*,—a terrible storm in the tropical regions.

**The Bethlehem**,—After the name of the place of Christ's nativity. Bethlehem is a town or village in Judea, about six

miles south-east of Jerusalem, famous for its being the place of Christ's birth

**The day of the Epiphany,**—The day on which the festival of the Epiphany is held. This church festival is celebrated on the 6th day of January, the 12th day after the Christmas, in commemoration of the appearance of Christ to the magians or philosophers of the East, who came to Bethlehem in order to adore him with presents, or, as others maintain, to commemorate the appearance of the star to the magians, or the manifestation of Christ to the Gentiles, or the appearance of Christ in the world

*Outwitted*,—overreached, defeated by stratagem or superior ingenuity **Aurea Chersonesus**,—(Lat) The golden Peninsula **Chersonesus**,—A Greek word, rendered by the Latins, *Peninsula* There are many of these, of which five are the most important —(1) Peloponnesus (2) The Thracian. (3) Taurica, now Crim Tartary, (Crimea) (4) Cimbrica (Jutland) (5) The Aurea which lies in India, beyond the Ganges.

**The very Aurea Chersonesus .Jerusalem** —“ He fancied himself arrived at a fountain-head of riches, at one of the sources of the unbounded wealth of King Solomon Josephus, in his work on the antiquities of the Jews, had expressed an opinion, that the gold for the building of the temple of Jerusalem had been procured from the mines of the Aurea Chersonesus.”—*Irving*

**The gold for the temple at Jerusalem**,—“ So Solomon overlaid the house within with pure gold and he made a partition by the chains of gold before the oracle, and he overlaid with gold. And the whole house he overlaid with gold, until he had finished all the house, also the whole altar that was by the oracle he overlaid with gold. And the floor of the house he overlaid with gold, within and without—*I Kings VI. 21. 22. 30.*

**Page 234.** *Dépôt*,—(Fr) A place for deposit; a store-house *Hostage*,—a person delivered to an enemy, as a pledge to secure the performance of conditions *Custody*,—charge. *Overboard*,—from the ship into the sea *There was war to the knife*,—there was a deadly strife.

**Page 235.** *Offing*,—that part of the sea which is at a good distance from the shore, or at a competent distance, where there is deep water, and no need of a

pilot *Bar*,—a bank of sand, gravel or earth, forming a shoal at the mouth of a river or harbour, obstructing entrance, or rendering it difficult *Weather the surf*,—stand the fury of the waves *Weather-tight*,—proof against rough weather *Reprieve*,—the temporary suspension of the execution of sentence of death on a criminal *Never was bearer welcome*,—the settlers on board the caravel who despaired of their lives for their not being able to cross the bar, were overjoyed at the proposal made by Ledesma of carrying tidings of their condition to the admiral,—in the same way as criminals, who are sentenced to capital punishment, generally become exceedingly glad when they receive the news of a suspension of the execution of their sentence.

**Page 236.** *The wind moderated*,—the fury of the wind subsided *To spare*,—to be spared, *i. e.*, lost *Crazy*,—shattered *Were having their effect on*,—were telling upon, or producing injurious influence upon the health of *To cope with*,—to endure successfully, to be able “to bear the brunt of” *Squalls*,—sudden and violent gusts of wind *Breakers*,—submerged rocks which break the waves, or the waves themselves which break against such rocks.

## CHAPTER XII.

**Page 237.** *Make head against*,—progress by resisting *Shaped*,—directed *Perforce*,—by force, forcibly. *Ran them*,—(trans), caused them to be driven *Housing*,—accommodating *Swiss lake dwellings*,—habitations of the Swiss in boats floating on the lakes (Notice that many Swiss, like the Japanese and the Chinese, live in boats floating on water) *Sad*,—bitter. *Intercourse*,—communication

**Page 238.** *Regulating*,—making subject to stated rules. *Volunteered*,—offered himself of his own accord *Periodical*,—happening at a stated time, or regularly in a certain period of time *Provisions*,—articles of food *Adroitness*,—skill, tact, dexterity *Game*,—animals pursued or taken in the chase, or in the sports of the field. *Secure*,—safe *Critical*,—risky. *Not, unattended*,—attended.

*Effected*,—performed *Unanimous*,—of the same opinion ; agreeing in opinion *Tumbling breakers*,—submerged rocks breaking waves (or waves so broken) so dangerous as to turn over vessels, sailing close by.

**Page 239.** *Castaways*,—unfortunate persons abandoned by God as unworthy of His mercy *Their imprisonment*,—their perilous situation, like a dead-lock *Glowing description*,—an account in bright colours ; a most attractive narrative *Veragua*,—in Central America *Is very characteristic of the writer*,—is highly expressive of the peculiarities or distinctive features of the writer's character *Marks*,—indications. *Fanatical superstition*,—error of judgment proceeding from an excessively blind zeal for religion *Confidence in the midst of despair*,—hoping against hope for safety *Exultation in the face ruin*,—rejoicing even in the case of a sure outlook of complete destruction. *Reflections*,—thoughts *Breaks into*,—gives expression to *Rhapsody*,—a confused jumble of statements without dependence or natural connection (*Originally*, a song, poem, or epic made up of different parts joined together ; a portion of an epic poem fit for recitation at one time). *Good faith*,—sincerity *Duells on*,—deals with ; describes *Bad faith*,—scepticism, or faithlessness *In a way Ferdinand nearly*,—in a manner that ought to have stung Ferdinand's heart with remorse for his insincerity with Columbus. *At full length*,—*In extenso*,—in its entirety *Wild fervour of a rapt enthusiast*,—extravagant enthusiasm of a fanatic transported in ecstasy.

**Page 240.** *Piteous*,—compassionate. *Peculiar*,—special *Fitting*,—proper *To resound marvellously*,—to be uttered, and mightily praised, by every one *For thine own*,—as exclusively yours *Empowered*,—authorised. *To dispose of them*,—to give them away, to part with them.

What did he more .... from Egypt.—The Israelites were enslaved by the Egyptians and were persecuted by them with great cruelty "And it came to pass in process of time that the King of Egypt died. and the children of Israel sighed by reason of the bondage, and they cried, and their cry came up unto God by reason of the bondage And God heard their groaning, and God remembered his covenant with Abraham,

with Isaac and with Jacob" (*Exodus II 23, 24*) So God appeared to Moses and said—"I have surely seen the affliction of my people which are in Egypt, and have heard their cry by reason of their taskmasters for I know their sorrows And I am come down to deliver them out of the hand of the Egyptians, and to bring them up out of that land unto a good land and a large,—unto a land flowing with milk and honey. . . Come now therefore, and I will send thee unto Pharaoh, that thou mayest bring forth my people, the children of Israel, out of Egypt (*Exodus, III, 7, 8, 9, 10*) Accordingly Moses went to the Egyptian ruler, and demanded the Israelites from him On his refusing to comply with the demand, the Egyptians were inflicted with ten plagues (*See Notes on P 13*). At last the enslaved Israelites were allowed to depart When they reached the Red Sea, they were still pursued by the Pharaoh But "Moses stretched out his hand over the sea, and the Lord caused the sea to go *back* by a strong east wind all that night, and made the sea *dry land*, and the waters were divided. And the children of Israel went into the midst of the sea upon *dry-ground* and the waters were a wall unto them on their right hand, and on their left And the Egyptians pursued, and went in after them in the midst of the sea, even all Pharaoh's horses, his chariots and his horsemen . And Moses (by God's command) stretched forth his hand over the sea, and the sea returned to his strength when the morning appeared, and the Egyptians fled against it and the Lord overthrew the Egyptians in the midst of the sea . Thus the Lord saved Israel that day out of the hand of the Egyptians; and Israel saw the Egyptians dead upon the sea-shore" (*Exodus, XIV 21 22 23 27 30*)

*He has many . in reserve*,—he has still kept in store many highly precious things, to be given in future *Impediment*,—obstacle

Abraham was above . Sarah youthful,—“Now Sarai Abram's wife bare him no children and she had an handmaid, an Egyptian, whose name was Hagar. And Sarai said unto Abram, “Behold now, the Lord hath restrained me from bearing I pray thee, go in unto my maid . it may be that I may obtain children by her And he went in unto Hagar and she conceived . And Hagar bare Abram a son, and Abram called his son's name which Hagar bare, Ismael. And Abram was four score and six years old, when Hagar bare Ishmael to Abram. (*Genesis, XVI. 1, 2, 4, 15, 16*) “And when Abram was ninety years old and nine, the Lord appeared to Abram and said—“.. I will multiply thee exceedingly Neither shall thy name any more be called Abram but thy name shall be Abraham, for a father of many

nations have I made thee ....As for Sarai, thy wife, thou shalt not call her name Sarai, but Sarah shall her name be. And I will bless her, and give thee a son also of her - yea, I will bless her, and she shall be a mother of nations ..(Then Abraham removed to Gerar). "And the Lord visited Sarah, ..(who) conceived and bare Abraham a son in his old age. And Abraham called the name of his son that was born unto him, whom Sarah bare to him, Isaac (*Genesis XXI*) Abraham was at this time hundred years old, and Sarah, ninety-one

**Page 241.** *Despondingly*,—despairingly *Succour*,—help [*Footnote* **A sarcasm** "to catch the conscience of the King."—It is no doubt, a taunt intended to make King Ferdinand feel remorse for his breaking promises with Columbus The quotation comes from Shakespeare's *Hamlet*, and it refers to Prince Hamlet's artifice of having a drama played, which involved in its plot an incident similar to the plot, revealed by the Ghost, by which Claudius, his uncle, had murdered his father, usurped the throne, and married the widowed queen (his mother)

"For murder, though it have no tongue, will speak  
With most miraculous organ I will have these players  
Play something like the murder of my father  
Before mine uncle. I'll observe his looks;  
I'll tent him to the quick. if he but blench,  
I know my course. I'll have grounds  
More relative than this; *the play's a thing*  
*Wherein I'll catch the conscience of the King*"

*Hamlet*, Act II. Sc. II ]

*Tribulations*,—severe troubles or afflictions; distresses of life *Are written in marble*,—are inevitable, like characters inscribed on marble which are indelible, i. e., which are not to be effaced **Though this be madness, there is method in it**,—Although this whole rhapsody may be considered as irrelevant in the main, yet it is sure that there is some shrewd purpose underlying it. It is really a clever composition which must be read between the lines The quotation comes from Shakespeare's *Hamlet* .—



*Polonius—(aside)*—"Though this be madness, yet there is method in it."—Act II Sc II.

*Alleged*,—so-called. *Ingenious device*,—clever trick. *Re-monstrating*,—expostulating.

**Page 242.** *Such matters*,—visions and other things relative to the supernatural. *Obtains*,—prevails *Wrought upon*,—influenced, affected "Airy nothings,"—unsubstantial things. The phrase is quoted from Shakespeare.—

"And as imagination bodies forth,  
The forms of things unknown, the poets' pen,  
Turns them to shapes and gives to airy nothing,  
A local habitation and a name"  
*Midsummer Night's Dream, Act V. Sc I.*

"**Thousand phantasies that crowd into the memory.**"—The innumerable fancies that come thickly upon the memory in rapid succession. This line is quoted from Milton —

"A thousand phantasies  
Begin to throng into my memory,  
Of calling shapes and beckoning shadows dire."  
*Comus, ll 205-7.*

*Special revelations from heaven*,—truths specially revealed or disclosed to him by God for his instruction and guidance *Fervour*,—warmth, zeal *According to the prophecy*,—(N B This prophecy is not to be found in the Bible Perhaps there was a tradition to this effect during those days) *Asked*,—viz, of the Pope *True faith*,—Christianity *Potentate*,—chief, or monarch *Isolated*,—cut off from society, "out of humanity's reach" *Infirm*,—weak *Severed*,—cut off *Sacraments of the Church*,—(see notes on page 83) *Supplicate*,—implore *Repair*,—go (intrans. verb)

**Page 243.** *The fatal consequences: at the Church*,—(read notes on Page 4) *More than his mere bodily life*,—i.e., soul *Staked*,—risked injury to [Because, he would lose not simply his life, but also his soul, if he would die in a place far away from the Christian world without benediction being pronounced by a clergyman upon his



dium of exchange, had now fallen in value to such an extent that articles of food could hardly be obtained for them. *Veneration*,—respect. *Evinced*,—shown. *The white men*,—the Europeans *Had given way to*,—had given place to. *These superior beings*,—the Europeans, whom the natives had taken for some beings come down from heaven. *Minister to their wants*,—supply their wants, by providing them with the necessaries of life. *Imminent*,—impending *At this last extremity*,—being placed in this last-named perilous situation, *viz.*, famine. *Ever fertile in devices*,—who always possessed a happy presence of mind enabling him to hit upon new means and contrivances *Cf* "His wonderful capacity for devising expedients on sudden emergencies did not forsake him." &c., (Read Text Page 115.) *Bethought him*,—thought within himself.

**Page 248** *Event*,—result. *Invested*,—endowed. *Those of.. against me*,—the mutineers headed by Francesco Porras *Those who .my command*,—Diego Mendez and his comrades. [Foot-note,—*Gratuitous*,—unwarrantable] *In testimony of the evils*,—as a sign of the grave penalties. *Sent upon*,—inflicted upon. *Appointed*,—as stated or fixed by Columbus.

**Page 249** *The predicted phenomenon*,—the natural appearance, as foretold by Columbus, *viz.*, the lunar eclipse *Proclaimed*,—announced *Abject terror*,—extreme fear which completely overpowered them. *Intercession*,—friendly interposition or mediation on their behalf. *To let him want for nothing*,—to supply him with everything he would stand in need of. *Avert this judgment*,—ward off this divine punishment *As an earnest of their sincerity*,—as an evidence of the genuineness of their promise given in advance *Earnest*,—(Lit.)—a part paid or delivered, in advance, as a pledge and security for the whole, *Diplomatically hesitating*,—pretending disinclination to undertake the task, through policy; as his hesitation would increase his importance. *Presently*,—shortly afterwards. *Affected*,—pretended *Softened*,—melted with pity. *Mystic rite*,—mysterious ceremony (for propitiating the deity) *The terrible shadow*,—*viz.*, the eclipse. *But being blended.....often is cf.*

"*Fear* guides more to their duty than *gratitude*, for one man who is virtuous from the love of virtue, from the obligation he thinks he lies under to the Giver of all, there are ten thousand who are good only from their apprehension of punishment."—*Goldsmith*

*Blended*,—mixed *Evanescent*,—momentary, short-lived, transitory *Hove*,—(*Lit*) rose *Hove in sight*,—appeared *Stood*,—steered its course *Put off*,—left

**Page 250.** *Reprieve*,—the suspension of the execution of sentence of death **Quarantine**,—originally a space of forty days, now of variable length—during which a ship arriving in port and suspected of being infected with a malignant contagious disease, is obliged to forbear all intercourse with the city or place, restraint from communication *At the top of his voice*,—as loudly as he could *Before long*,—ere it was too late, *i e*, very soon *Slight mark*,—trifling token *Bacon*,—hog's flesh salted and dried *Scheme*,—plan *Planned*,—devised *In the last degree*,—extremely **Tantalising**,—extremely tempting and tormenting on account of non-realisation The meaning of the word is derived from the story of Tantalus. He was a Lydian king who was condemned to be plunged in water, with choice fruits hanging over him, without the power of reaching them to satisfy his hunger or his thirst

**Page 251** *Civil*,—courteous *Disclaiming*,—disowning. *Ultior design*,—remote motive. *Missive*,—letter despatched *He was free*,—he was at perfect liberty, (having had no chance of being contradicted). *Parenthetically*,—by the way *Scruple*,—hesitate *Expense*,—sacrifice *Carry them*,—*viz*, all the castaways *Their lot*,—the fate of either weal or woe which would be common to all of them. *Overtures*,—proposals *Repulsed*,—rejected

**Page 252** *Apparition*,—an unreal appearance, a vision *Conjured up*,—brought into existence, raised up *Sorcery*,—magic, witchcraft *Tangible*,—capable of being touched, *i e*, having a corporeal existence, and not unsubstantial **Peace-offering**,—originally, among the Jews, a voluntary offering to God, in thankfulness for his benefits, hence, satisfaction offered to an offended person, especially

to a superior. Here, a mark of friendship *Material character*,—corporeal or physical quality. *The supposed phantom ship*,—the real ship which was fancied to have been Unsubstantial or an apparition *Differences*,—quarrels *Issue*,—ultimate stage *Descent*,—sudden invasion from the sea. *To anticipate this attack*,—to take the field beforehand *Sallied out*,—rushed out

**Page 253.** *Prodigies of valour*,—extraordinary feats of prowess *Affray*,—fight *The appeal to*,—the act of resorting to *Brute force*,—physical force, opposed to, intellectual or moral force *These attributes*,—these qualities, viz, immortality, &c. *Impelled*,—drove, urged *Encounter*,—fight *Ledesma*,—(See Text pp. 235—36,) *Gigantic*,—huge *Fainted*,—swooned

**Page 254.** *Stentorian yell*,—A very loud cry The word is derived from Stentor—a Greek herald in the Trojan War According to Homer, his voice was as loud as that of fifty men combined *Were at their heels*,—were pursuing them closely *Invincible vitality*,—extraordinary degree of the vital energies, or the principle of life *Ring-leader*,—leader of a party of lawless persons *Should not*. *habitation*,—should not live. *Awaited the promised succour*,—waited for the help that Ovando promised them *With the deferred*,—with that mental uneasiness which is caused by disappointment or delay in the realisation of hopes. Cf.—“Hope deferred maketh the heart sick.”

### CHAPTER XIII.

**Page 255** *Gladdened*,—rejoiced *Embarkation*,—getting on board the vessels. *As may be supposed*,—because they were extremely anxious to leave the place *Adverse*,—unfavourable. *To the surprise*,—“to” signifies result. *Punctilious courtesy*,—strictly ceremonious politeness *Suite*,—a company of attendants *In state*,—in great magnificence. *Differences*,—dispute

**Page 256** *The conflicting the governor*,—the opposing or clashing authority of the viceroy and the governor, —Columbus and Ovando. *Insisted*,—urged *Custody*,—

confinement. *He even, &c.,—i. e.,* Ovando. *Instituting,*—commencing *Disputed,*—objected to *To take upon himself,*—to assume *Office,*—position, function *Unfortunate as regards,*—injurious or detrimental to *Proceeds,*—income

**Page 257.** *To make head against a sea of troubles,*—to proceed by resisting endless misfortunes This is a misquotation from Shakespeare's *Hamlet*—

"Or to take up arms against a sea of troubles  
And by opposing end them. . ." Act III, Sc I

**His evil star was in the ascendant.**—His evil star now began to command power or influence, *i. e.,* it became *lord of the ascendant i. e.* He was now going to be unfortunate in all the affairs of his life

**Ascendant,**—'In astrology the whole heaven is divided into twelve portions, called *houses*, through which the heavenly bodies pass every 24 hours In casting a man's fortune by the stars, the whole host is divided into two parts—(beginning from the east), six above, and six below the horizon The eastern ones are called the *ascendant*, because they are about to rise, the other six are the *descendant*, because they have already passed the zenith The twelve houses are thus awarded—(1) Life, (2) Fortune and riches, (3) Brethren (4) Relatives (5) Children (6) Health (7) Marriage (8) Death (9) Religion (10) Dignities (11) Friends and benefactors. (12) Enemies

*Foundered,*—sank *Sprung,*—cracked *Succumbing to,*—sinking under, submitting to *Prostrated,*—thrown down *Plight,*—condition (always used in a bad sense) *At large,*—set free from confinement

**Page 258** *Stimulate,*—sharpen the intensity of *Which was to deepen all his evils,*—which was to increase all his miseries *Too unwell,*—so unwell as not to be able *Touching,*—pathetic *Couriers,*—message-bearers *His very hair stands on end,*—he is struck with the deepest dismay *Memorandum,*—a note. *Commend,*—entrust *But,*—only *What a friend to these,*—viz, Isabella. *One continued wail,*—one united and uninterrupted cry of lamentation *The dread decree,*—the terrible command of God (about the death of Isabella) *Tho departed,*—the dead. *Addressed,*—offered up *Was no more,*—was dead *Departing spirits,*—souls leaving the body

**Page 259.** *Yearn much after,—*which they long to see, or for the prosperity of which they are so anxious *Would give "one longing... west,"*—would cast on the far-off west Indies a long wistful look indicative of tenderness and disinclination to depart. The line comes from Gray's "Elegy" —

"For who, to dumb forgetfulness a prey  
This pleasing anxious being ever resigned,  
Left the warm precincts of the cheerful day  
Nor cast one longing, lingering look behind"

*And if so, what . . . had told her,*—and if her departing soul had been permitted to have a look at the Indies, she would have seen that the condition of the poor Indians was far different from what had been represented to her during her life-time by her own officers and governors *Aught,—anything Commanded,*—read Text, P. 128 *The Indians were to be free,*—Read Text, P. 211, Para. 7. *Spiritual instruction,*—religious training. Read Text, pp 172—3 *Payment for their labour,*—Text, Page 211, Para 7 *A mockery of wages,*—a ridiculously low rate of remuneration. *Literally,*—actually (said without any figure of speech in the language) *To catch the crumbs,*—to snatch eagerly the small fragments or bits of bread. (This shows their want of proper sustenance.) *Under cruel buffetings,*—blows or slaps being, every now and then, dealt out to him.

**Page 260.** *Dire toil,*—terrible drudgery. *A place which knew him not,*—a place, of which the inhabitants did not know him, his native place which was deserted by his friends and relatives, either through death or through forcible ejection, being now occupied by "new faces, other minds." *Household,*—members of a house *Gaunt,*—lean; meagre *Had her departing . . . her dominions,*—had her departing soul been able to cast "a longing, lingering look" into the utmost limits of the Spanish territories. *Closing scene,*—the last period of her life *Eventful,*—full of many new events or adventures. *Survive,*—live beyond the life of *Memorialize,*—send petition. *Coldly,*—indifferently. *Disposed,*—inclined "*His,*"—Columbus's *Professed,*—declared *Urged strenuously,*—

insisted vigorously on. *In accordance with,—in compliance with Making that dignity .... his family.*—(Read Text, P 78.) *Breach—violation*

**Page 261.** *Too flagrant,*—so glaring as not to become his high station *Procrastinated,*—temporized; delayed *Significantly named,*—so named as to express adequately its peculiar function

**Board of Discharges of the Royal Conscience.**—Of "His claims were referred to a tribunal called 'The Council of the discharges of the conscience of the deceased Queen, and of the King' This is a kind of tribunal commonly known by the name of the *Junta de Descargos*, composed of persons nominated by the sovereign, to superintend the accomplishment of the last will of his predecessor, and the discharge of his debts Two consultations were held by this body, but nothing was determined The wishes of the king were too well known to be thwarted."—*Iving*

"*Fear old age, for it does not come alone*",—fear old age, for it brings along with it diseases, infirmities, and other misfortunes. *Elasticity,*—buoyancy of spirits enabling one to recover immediately from a shock. *Bear,*—successfully endure *Station,*—rank, position. *Delay of suitorship,*—delay in the realisation of his expectations from his application to the court for favour **A similar decline of in their prime.**—A similar reverse of fortune in old age is to be found in the lives of many men,—men who have been pushingly enterprising and fortunate enough in their manhood. The life of Cardinal Wolsey—whose career in manhood during the reign of Henry VIII was dazzlingly brilliant, but who afterwards fell "like Lucifer never to hope again," and who moralized so pathetically on "the state of man"—in the well-known lines of Shakespeare :—

"Farewell, a long farewell, to all my greatness !  
This is the state of man To-day he puts forth  
The tender leaves of hope, to-morrow blossoms,  
And bears his blushing honours thick upon him  
The third day, comes a frost,—a killing frost,  
And,—when he thinks, good, easy man ! full surely  
His greatness is a-ripening,—nips his root,  
And then he falls, as I do I have ventured,  
Like little wanton boys that swim on bladders,  
This many summers in a sea of glory ;  
But far beyond my depth ; my high-blown pride,



At length broke under me , and now has left me,  
 Weary, and old with service, to the mercy  
 Of a rude stream, that must for ever hide me.  
 Vain pomp, and glory of this world, I hate ye ;  
 I feel my heart new opened ; O how wretched  
 Is that poor man that hangs on princes' favours !  
 There is, betwixt that smile we would aspire to,  
 That sweet aspect of princes, and their ruin,  
 More pangs and fears than wars or women have ,  
 And when he falls, he falls like Lucifer,  
 Never to hope again "

" O Cromwell, Cromwell,  
 Had I but serv'd my God with half the zeal  
 I serv'd my king, he would not in mine age,  
 Have left me naked to mine enemies "

*King Henry VIII, Act III, Sc II*

Such were also the careers of John Milton, Napoleon Buonaparte, Thomas Viscount Wentworth—Earl of Strafford, William Laud, Archbishop of Canterbury and many others **Their fortunes with themselves.**—

The fortunes of such great men, after reaching their culminating points, begin to wane, as the persons themselves become infirm with their old age **And those clouds, which were but white across the setting sun.**—Those slight indications of a coming reverse of fortune,—which were only indistinctly visible like little patches of white clouds scattered here and there in the sky across the full-noon-day blaze of their careers of good fortune,—assume by degrees, towards the close of their lives, a gloomy and threatening aspect like dense and dark masses of evening clouds foreboding the approach of a terrible hurricane, as the sun of their lives gradually becomes feeble and sinks low to disappear altogether in the western horizon **The comparison may be thus expanded.**—Just as those little patches of clouds, that appear white and scattered here and there in the sky while the bright mid-day sun shines glaringly,—gather into dense and dark masses of clouds foreboding rain and thunderstorm towards the end of the day when the sun no longer shines brightly and is about to set in the western horizon,—so the stray

indications of misfortune which appear to be of no great consequence during the brilliant careers of great men, are gradually united together, and assume a threatening character towards the end of their lives.

A great man's career is here compared to the sun, the white specks of clouds in the mid-day, to slight indications of misfortune, and the dense and black clouds in the evening, to misfortunes of an overwhelming nature, and the setting of the sun to the total decline of good fortune

*Cf* "So now that shadow of mischance appeared,  
No graver than as when some little cloud,  
Cuts the fiery highway of the sun,  
And isles a light in the offing .."

*Tennyson, — Enoch Arden*

**Shortly after the arrival of Philip and his queen.**—After the death of Queen Isabella, Joanna her daughter succeeded to the throne of Castile. Her husband Philip, son of Maximilian I. Emperor of Germany, surnamed the Handsome, together with Joanna arrived at Coruna in Spain from Flanders on the 28th April, 1506.

*Prescott* writes —While the queen's remains were yet scarcely cold, King Ferdinand took the usual measures for announcing the succession. He resigned the crown of Castile, which he had worn with so much glory for thirty years. From a platform raised in the great square of Toledo, the heralds proclaimed with sound of trumpet, the accession of Philip and Joanna to the Castilian throne, and the royal standard was unfurled by the Duke of Alva in honour of the illustrious pair. The king of Aragon then publicly assumed the title of administrator or governor of Castile, as provided by the queen's testament ..

*Deploring*,—expressing his regret at. *Though*,—on account of

**Page 262.** *The like of* . . . . . *seen*,—unprecedented. *Touching*,—relating to, regarding. *Indomitable*,—unconquerable. **But there was then only further life**,—although he might entertain at this period of his life the idea of a fresh voyage of discovery, yet Providence would not allow him to undertake it. Heaven now decreed that he should perform the last voyage

of life and reach the shores of the other world—"that undiscovered country from whose bourne no traveller returns,"—with which the learned thinkers and discoverers as well as the ignorant and the illiterate whose travelling and experience are confined to the narrow limits of the district of their native place, are equally acquainted **Looked at in this way** . . *each of us is to be*,—viewed from this standpoint, every one of us living in this world is destined to be a great discoverer,—*viz*, of the great mysteries of the world to be. *Linger too long*,—make too much delay. *Hero*,—a great man, whose character has much to be admired. *Sacraments*,—see notes on Page 83. *In manus tuas, Domine commendo spiritum meum*,—into thy hands, O Lord, I commend my spirit **Ascension Day**,—the Thursday but one before Whitsuntide, the day on which is commemorated the Saviour's ascension into heaven after his resurrection, —called also Holy Thursday

---

## NOTES ON THE PREFACE.

### SUMMARY.

**PARAS. 1—3 Nature of the work.** *The Life of Columbus* belongs to a series of biographies edited by the author, and reproduced from his main work, "History of the Spanish Conquest in America,"—a work written chiefly with a view to illustrate the history of slavery. In recasting the present work Helps was assisted by Mr Herbert Preston Thomas

**PARA. 4 Popular error about Columbus's work.** The great importance of the principal event of Columbus's life, *viz*, the discovery of America, leads men to think that Columbus knew that there existed a great undiscovered continent, and that he proceeded directly to discover it,—springing at once from something known to something unknown. (*Read Text, P. 55 Para 8*) **The error corrected.** The fact is that Columbus's aim was to proceed by an *unknown route* to a land known, or what he considered to be known,—or in other words, to go to the

territories of Kublai Khan or Prester John, by an easy pathway (*Text P 55. Para. 8 and P 58.*)

**PARA. 5. His motives.** His motives have been similarly misunderstood. They were in the main purely of a religious character. He intended to rebuild the Holy Sepulchre with the gold gained from the eastern potentates and to spread Christianity over the farthest limits of the earth (*Text P. 72.*)

**PARAS. 6—10. His complex nature,—not a product of the age.** Columbus was hardly a product of the age he lived in. He has all the spirit of (a) credulous crusader, and (b) the investigating nature of a modern man of science.

**(a) His credulity and enthusiasm of a crusader.** Into the self-seeking fifteenth century,—an age characterised by the selfishness and narrow worldliness of Pope Alexander Borgia, King Louis XI of France, King Henry VII. of England and Ferdinand the Catholic of Spain,—Columbus carried the chivalrous ideas of a typical crusader of the twelfth century, like St. Louis. With regard to the church doctrines he was most unswerving and uninquiring. He followed the then prevalent theological dogmas, without even questioning their propriety. In this respect Columbus was very different from Las Casas, the churchman, in whose religious views there was a greater degree of breadth and catholicity. (*Real Text P. 242* "Columbus was as credulous as his contemporaries on the subject of the supernatural")

**(b) His Scientific spirit.** On the contrary, Columbus regarded natural phenomena with the spirit of inductive philosophy like that of Lord Bacon, in an age when the metaphysical teachings of Aristotle and Thomas Aquinas held absolute sway over the minds of men. (*Text P. 54*)

**PARA 11. Partial realisation of his aims.** Like the alchemists of old trying to discover the fanciful philosopher's stone, Columbus in vain attempted to find out Kublai Khan or Prester John. As an indirect result,

however, of his attempts, the New World was discovered:  
(Text P 35)

### PARAS 12--13. **Speculations about Columbus.**

His voyages are highly interesting, and afford ample scope for speculation. To consider what would have happened from a slight change of circumstance in the course of his memorable proceedings has always been a favourite speculation with historians and all thinking men. Had Columbus made his first discovery of land at a point much southward of that which he had actually discovered, South America might have been colonized by the Spaniards had he, on the other hand, sailed northwards the English could not have colonized North America a century afterwards.

### PARAS 14--15 **Causes of the downfall of the Spanish kingdom in America.** The cause of the

formation of a Spanish dominion in America greatly suffered for its being first established in the West India Islands instead of in the continent. The Spanish colonial government was enfeebled and thrown into disorder and confusion from a multiplicity of governors. Its force of centralisation was lost by the removal of the original inhabitants from the scene of action on account of the outrages and evil ways of the conquerors. Had it been a more extensive empire in the continent, the Spanish monarchs too would have looked upon it more seriously, and would not have sent out such worthless governors as Ovando, Bobadilla and others. The work of discovery and conquest begun by Columbus must then have been entrusted to men like Cortes, Pizarro and others, and in that case, might have lasted even to the present day.

**Page vii.**—*For the most part,*—in the main *Verbatim*,—(Latin) Word for word *History of the Spanish Conquest in America*,—written by Sir Arthur Helps,—the main work from which the "Life of Columbus," and other biographies have been extracted. *With a view to*,—for the purpose of *Illustrate*,—describe clearly with facts. *Condensed memoir*,—biography compressed in a small compass.

*Add to*,—increase. *Materials*,—(here) incidents recorded.  
*Research*,—critical investigation

**Page viii.** *Talked about*,—spoken of *There is very*  
*about him*,—there has been left very little new in-  
 formation about him which might be given for the interest  
 of the public *Absorbed in, and to a certain* . *causes*  
*which led to it*,—being completely engrossed in and in  
 some degree, carried away by, the thought of the princi-  
 pal event of Columbus's life—*viz*, the discovery of Ame-  
 rica, we have sometimes been misled as to the cause which  
 brought it about *Apt*,—inclined or disposed *Made his*  
*way directly*,—proceeded at once *Springing at one bound*  
*unknown*,—taking "a big jump into the unknown"  
 (America), in one effort, as it were, from a land which  
 was already known (Europe) *Bound*,—leap *Whereas*,  
 —on the contrary *Dream*,—fondly cherished aspiration.  
*Route*,—passage *The Holy Sepulchre*,—the sacred tomb  
 of Christ at Jerusalem

**Page ix.** *Crusader*,—a Christian who takes part  
 in a *Crusade*, or a holy war undertaken by the Christians  
 in the 11th and 12th centuries to recover the Holy Land  
 from the Infidels—(Mahammadans) *The investigating na-*  
*ture*,—the spirit of making a strict and critical enquiry.  
**The Arabs have** *his own father*—There is  
 a common saying among the Arabs that an individual  
 inherits the dispositions and characteristics more of the  
 period he lives in than of his own father, that is to say, the  
 character of an individual is very powerfully moulded by  
 the influence of the age and environments in which he lives

(This view has been taken by Church of the life of Socrates  
 See *Trial and Death of Socrates—Introduction*, Page X, and also  
 by Harrison with regard to Cromwell—See Harrison's *Life of*  
*Cromwell*—Pp 8, 9, and 15. "Not a few of the elements which make  
 up the history of our people were represented in his birth and sur-  
 roundings," &c —P. 8. "On every circumstance of his home the  
 Protestant seal was set" P 9 "The times had not a little to  
 teach him" P 15)

But just the opposite view has been taken by other great  
 writers of the lives of great men They are of opinion that a great  
 man, instead of being "the product of the age," moulds and stamps,  
 as it were, the age itself in which he lives with his own transcendent  
 greatness. As an illustration Carlyle's opinion may be quoted here —

"For as I take it, Universal History, the history of what man has accomplished in this world, is at the bottom of the History of the Great Men who have worked here. They were the leaders of men, these great ones; the modellers, patterns and in a wide sense creators, of whatsoever the general mass of men contrived to do or to attain. All things that we see standing accomplished in the world, are properly the outer material result, the practical realisation and embodiment, of Thoughts that dwelt in the Great Men sent into the world—the soul of the whole world's history, it may justly be considered, were the history of these. We cannot look, however imperfectly, upon a great man, without gaining something by him. He is the living light-fountain, which it is good and pleasant to be near. The light which enlightens, which has enlightened the darkness of the world; and this not as a kindled lamp only, but rather as a natural luminary shining by the gift of Heaven, a flowing light-fountain, as I say, of native original insight, of majesty, and heroic nobleness,—in whose radiance all souls feel that it is well with them. He was the 'creature of the Time,' they say, the Time called him forth: the Time did every thing he nothing—but what we the little critic could have done too! This seems to be but melancholy work. The Time call forth? Alas, we have known Times call loudly enough for their great man; but not find him when they called! He was not there; Providence had not sent him, the Time calling its loudest, had to go down to confusion and wreck because he would not come when called. For if we will think of it, no Time need have gone to ruin, could it have found a man great enough, a man wise and good enough; wisdom to discern truly what the Time wanted, valour to lead it on the right road thither; these are the salvation of any Time. But I liken common languid Times, with their unbelief, distress, perplexity, with their languid doubting characters and embarrassed circumstances, impotently crumbling down into ever worse distress towards final ruin;—all this I liken to dry dead fuel, waiting for the lightning out of Heaven that shall kindle it. The great man with his free force direct out of God's own hand is the lightning. His word is the wise healing word which all can believe in. All blazes round him now when he has once struck on it, into fire like his own. The dry mouldering sticks are thought to have called him forth—!—Those are critics of small vision, I think, who cry. "See, is it not the sticks that made the fire?" No sadder proof can be given by a man of his own littleness than disbelief in great men. There is no sadder symptom of a generation than such general blindness to the spiritual lightning, with faith only in the heap of barren dead fuel. It is the last consummation of unbelief. In all epochs of the world's history, we shall find the Great Man to have been the indispensable saviour of his epoch;—the lightning, without which the fuel never would have burnt. The History of the World, I said n'ready, was the biography of Great Men."—*Carlyle,—On Heroes, Hero-worship*

Irving in a similar spirit says —

"It is wonderful how much the destinies of countries depend at times upon the virtues of individuals and how it is given to great spirits, by combining, exciting and directing the latent powers of a nation to stamp it as were, with their own greatness. Such beings realise the idea of guardian angels, appointed by Heaven to watch over the destinies of empires. Such had been Prince Henry for the kingdom of Portugal; and such was now for Spain, the illustrious Isabella"

Helps himself does not adopt the view regarding the cause of the advent of Great Men as embodied in the Arabian proverb. Hence he says—"This was not so with Columbus, he hardly seems to belong at all to his age" In the next page also he writes—"Perhaps it will be found &c. Read also the concluding lines of Chapter I, Page 46 of your Text written exactly in the spirit of Carlyle,—the beautiful comparison of Great Men with conspicuous sources of light being exactly parallel.

*Worldliness*,—mammon-worship; covetousness, addictedness to gain and temporal enjoyments. *Self-seeking*,—selfishness *Pope Alexander Borghia, King Louis XI. of France, King Henry VII of England, and King Ferdinand V. of Spain*,—were all persons notorious for their selfishness. *Saint Louis*, had the noble chivalrous spirit of a crusader.

**The Angelic Doctor**,—Thomas Aquinas. He was so called because he discussed the knotty points in connection with the being and nature of angels. For example, he raises the question,—“If an angel passes from one place to another, does he traverse the intervening space?” The Doctor says that it depends upon circumstances. It is said, by way of a quiz, that one of his questions was “How many angels can dance on the point of a pin” —*Adapted from Brewer's Ruled*,—exercised considerable influence over *Unexampled tyranny*,—unparalleled ascendancy or authority *Dogmatic*,—overbearingly authoritative or assertive. *Theology*,—(Gr. *Theos*, = Lat. *Deus* = Sans. देव = a god and Gr. *Logos*, a word or discourse.) A discourse or science of God and divine things **When science was more dogmatic than theology**,—*Physical science*, being essentially *empirical* or based upon experiment and human experience, can never dogmatically assert its teachings, but should always confine itself to reasoning and criticism. *Theology*,—on the other hand, dwelling, as



it does, upon divine subjects, is considered to be based upon *revelation* or *direct inspiration from heaven*. Hence its dogmatism and pretensions to its infallibility. But whatever *science* there was in the fifteenth century, it was more overbearingly assertive than theology. *Bodies falling to the earth, &c.*—the student should bear in mind how the apparently simple circumstance,—*viz*, the falling of an apple to the ground,—made Sir Isaac Newton deeply think over the subject, which led to the discovery of the *Law of Gravitation*. Read the interesting dialogue on this subject written by Kingsley

**Page X** *Natural phenomena*,—appearances of nature which are capable of being perceived by the senses, specially by the eye **Columbus regarded inductive philosophy**,—Columbus would not remain satisfied with a mere observation of these phenomena, but would at once proceed, in a truly scientific spirit, and following virtually the Inductive method of Inquiry, to arrive at a generalised truth, from them, starting from the individual, and closely studying the relations of cause and effect **Inductive philosophy**,—a system of philosophy containing generalisations arrived at in an Inductive method of enquiry,—a method which brings forward particulars with a view to establish some general conclusion *Perhaps it will be found .. do to theirs*,—Helps here distinctly rejects, in general terms, the view of the evolutionists regarding the cause of the advent of very great men. Here he means to say that ordinary men are really the “products of the age,” but those who are transcendently superior to their fellow-men, far from being created by the age, are rather the makers, or modellers of the epoch they live in *Renovate*,—renew, restore to the first state, or to a good state after decay or destruction *The first principles*,—the fundamental truths or maxims *If law it be*,—if it be considered worthy of the name of a “law” *May hold good as regards*,—may be found to be applicable to **The man who is too closely united first principles**—the man whose mind is fettered, as it were or is entirely moulded by the thoughts and sentiments of his own age, is hard-

ly able and disposed to study events by tracing them to their fundamental principles, in order to remedy some existing evils. A really great man is above the influence of his environments and can always free himself from the bondage of conventional mode of thinking and acting, when he is bent upon remedying some evils in the existing order of things. *It is very noticeable in Columbus*,—it is really a very remarkable feature in Columbus's mental constitution. *Unswerving*,—not deviating from the established doctrines. *Un-inquiring*,—never questioning the propriety or reasonableness (of any church doctrine) *Son of the Church*,—member of Christian Church,—a Christian. *Would have taken nothing for granted*,—would have accepted no conclusion as valid which was based upon some assumption. *Research*,—investigation. *Would not have held names in science*,—would not have been silenced by the mere citation of the authority of the greatest scientific men of the time [Footnote *Dissimilar*,—unlike *A product of his age*,—moulded by the influence of the period he lived in]

**Page XI. The perilous sea of theological investigation**,—The most difficult and hazardous research of settling some disputed religious questions. *Churchman*,—clergyman. *The Indians should . . . converted*,—the Indians should be enlightened, to a certain extent, before they were baptized, in order that they might better realise the true spirit of Christianity and the importance of conversion. *Postponed to instruction*,—put off for giving some sort of education to them (the Indians). *Found ready acceptance from*,—been immediately adopted by *The good bishop*,—viz, Las Casas. *Met with small response from*,—hardly been approved of and accepted by **The soldierly theology**,—the plain, blunt, and uncouth sort of religious doctrines,—doctrines based not upon sound reasoning and catholic views, but upon gross credulity and bigoted narrowness. (*N. B.* Columbus had faith in "the efficacy of mere formal communion with the church, and so he felt no necessity for instruction and culture before conversion" (See Text, pp 242—43). *Insight*,—deep and penetrating inspection or view. *Foresight*,—fore-knowledge accompanied with pru-

dence; provident care of futurity. **Attain the exact ends they aim at**,—achieve success in realising the self-same objects they seek after. *In this respect all such men, &c chemistry*,—(Read Text, p. 35. “*This instantly...vdguely called the Indies; and the search after whom .. the alchemist’s pursuit after the philosopher’s stone was in chemistry*”,—and Notes on them.) **Partake the career of**,—resemble the lives of. *Transmute*,—convert, transform. **Made valuable discoveries**,—see notes on Text, Page 35. *He did not rebuild the Holy Sepulchre, &c*,—the rebuilding of the Holy tomb of Jesus Christ at Jerusalem, the waging of another Holy War against the Infidels to recover the Holy Land from them, and to find out Kublai Khan of Cathay or Prester John, were the fondly cherished dreams of Columbus,—“the exact ends” he aimed at **But he brought... the Old**,—although he did not succeed in achieving “the exact ends” he aimed at, yet he chanced to accomplish a far greater exploit, *viz*, the discovery of America, and the bringing of the New World into immediate contact with the Old.

**Page XII** *A favourite speculation*,—a much-liked theorising *Things which led to great events*,—proceedings bringing about memorable events (*e g*, the voyage of Columbus leading to the discovery of America) *Idle*,—unprofitable *Inevitable*,—unavoidable; sure to happen *Such a field*,—such an ample scope. *Immense*,—vast. *The going to sleep of the helmsman*,—(See Text, Pages 106, 107.) *Unshipping of the rudder*,—(see Text, Page 84, Para 4) *Did occur*,—actually took place “*The Pinzon*”,—it ought to be “*The Pinta*,” which was commanded by Martin Alonso Pinzon. *Event*,—ultimate result **The gentlest breeze carried with it the destinies of future empires**,—even the most insignificant incident (in the course of the memorable voyage) like the feeblest breeze, had a great importance attached to it, and had in itself weight enough to decide the fate of future empires Had the gentlest breeze blown in a different direction, the course of the ships would have been changed, and so the result of the expedition would have been far otherwise.

**Page XIII.** *All the vigour that belonged to,—all the energy and activity which characterised. Wrested,—snatched away, conquered Sicay,—rule The maritime nations,—the nations living on the sea-side, and having an extensive commerce and a greater naval superiority. This specially refers to the English, the great rival maritime nation who took Bahama Islands in 1718 Big with,—(Int.) pregnant with; fraught with It would hardly have been left for the English more than a century afterwards to found these colonies,—This refers to the English colonization of America in the seventeenth century*

"The commencement of English colonisation dates from the reign of James I. In that of Elizabeth, Raleigh endeavoured to plant a colony in North America, in the district, called after the queen, Virginia, but it proved a failure Towards the close of Elizabeth's reign, and the beginning of that of James, several discoveries and surveys were made in North America, and in 1606 James granted charters to two companies—the London or South Virginia Company, and the Plymouth Company,—for planting colonies in that quarter, in consequence of which James Town, in the Bay of Chesapeake, was founded in the following year, and was kept from perishing by the courage and fortitude of James Smith In 1610 Lord Delaware proceeded thither as governor of Virginia, with a new body of emigrants, who were again re-inforced in the following year; and from this time, the colony flourished and increased In 1610 a charter was also granted for the colonisation in Newfoundland"—*The Student's Hume.*

**Which proved to be the seeds of .to behold,—**which turned out to be the foundation of the modern American nation,—the noblest, the most enlightened, the most advanced and the most flourishing nation on the face of the earth *Humanly speaking,—speaking after the fashion of men,—and in accordance with their experience and stock of knowledge Those of the West India Islands,—instead of in the mainland of America Multiplicity,—large number Colonial government,—the administration of of the Spanish colonies in America Comparatively few,—few in comparison with those of the continent of America.*

**Scene of action**—the field of active enterprise,—of hard “struggle for existence” and for “survival.” *Lacked*,—wanted; were deficient in. **That compressing force**,—that force of centralisation;—that power of binding units together into a compact body, so as to make it powerful enough to withstand successfully the attack of an enemy

**Page XIV.** *Outrages*,—atrocities; revolting acts *Virulence*,—extreme malignity. *More seriously*,—with a greater degree of earnestness and consideration (in the case of an extensive empire in the continent). **To have held the country at all, they must have held it well**,—had the Spanish Monarchs been convinced (as they would certainly have been in the case of a continental empire in America) of the absolute necessity of keeping the American dominions in their possession, they would have ruled the territories more seriously, more honestly and more justly, by sending out more efficient governors, than those that were actually sent, (as Ovando, Bobadilla and others) *It would not have, &c.*,—in the case of more extensive continental territories. *Must then have been entrusted to men like*,—must have been committed, in the case of continental dominions from the very beginning, to the charge of equally competent men like (Cortes, Pizarro and others)

**Foot-note P. 76.** *Seven cities*,—see P 5, under “Mystic Islands”

**P. 80.** *Requisition to*,—demand upon *Process*,—(a legal term) the whole course of proceedings in a casue, civil or criminal *Runaway*,—fugitive.

**P. 81.** **A Cave of Adullam**,—a capacious cave near Adullam—an ancient city of Judah, some twenty miles south-west of Jerusalem David in his flight from Saul “escaped to the Cave Adullam; and every one that was in distress and every one that was in debt, and every one that was discontented gathered themselves unto him; and he became a captain over them; and there were with him about four hundred men.”—I Samuel, XXII. 1. 2.

## APPENDIX I. LIVES OF PERSONS.

(HISTORICAL AND MYTHOLOGICAL)  
ARRANGED IN ALPHABETICAL ORDER.

### A.

**Abraham**,—the progenitor of the Israelitish nation. He was a native of Chaldea, but migrated with his wife Sarah with his nephew Lot, to Canaan, where he lived a nomadic life, and worshipped the one God, Jehovah, in the midst of the polytheistic Canaanites (see Notes on Text, Page 240) Abraham died at the age of 175 (about 1800 B C) Of his two sons, Isaac was the ancestor of the Israelites, and the Arabs claim to be descended from Ishmael, whose mother was Hagar, a bond-woman. Later tradition ascribed to Abraham a complete knowledge of astronomy and philosophy, the invention of alphabetic writing, the art of interpreting dreams, &c. Even among the Mahammedans, Abraham is reckoned a prophet and the friend of God, and they attribute to him the building of the sacred Kaaba at Mecca.

**Æneas**,—a Trojan prince, son of Anchises and the goddess Venus. During the Trojan war, he behaved with great valour in defence of his country, yet he is accused of betraying it to the Greeks, and of preserving his life and property by treacherous measures. When Troy was in flames, he carried away upon his shoulders his father Anchises and the statues of his household gods, leading his son Ascanius by his hand, and leaving his wife to follow behind. It is said that he retired to Mount Ida, where he built a fleet of twenty ships, and set sail in quest of a settlement. From Sicily he sailed for Italy, but was driven on the coasts of Africa, and kindly received by Dido, queen of Carthage, who being enamoured of him, wished to marry him, but he left Carthage, and after a voyage of seven years, and the loss of thirteen ships, arrived in the Tiber. Latinus, the king of the country received him with hospitality, and gave him his daughter Lavinia in marriage. Æneas succeeded his father-in-law, but his reign was but of short duration.

**Alexander VI. Pope**,—the original name of this pontiff was Roderic Borgia, and his mother was sister to Pope Calixtus III, by whom he was made cardinal in 1455. On the death of Innocent VIII, he secured his own election by bribery. He was a man of dissolute life, and resorted to all sorts of unjustifiable means of raising money. Born at Valencia, Spain 1431 and died in 1503.

**Aliaco Cardinal**,—Pedro de Aliaco, Archbishop of Cambray and Cardinal, was born in 1340, and died according to some in 1416, according to others, in 1425. He was the author of many works, and one of the most learned and scientific men of his day. Las Casas is of opinion that his writings had more effect in stimulating Columbus to his enterprise than those of any other author.

**Ambrose, St.**,—the son of a prefect of Gaul who became Archbishop of Milan, and governor of Liguria and Æmilia. On the death of Auxentius, Archbishop of Milan, in 373, and after a contest between the Arians and Catholics, he was consecrated bishop. In 383, he was deputed by the governor Valentinian to prevail upon the tyrant Maximus not to enter Italy, and was successful in his mission. He composed that noble hymn "Te Deum Laudamus."

**Apollo**,—according to Cicero, there were four deities of this name. The God here referred to was the son of Vulcan and the tutelary god of the Athenians. One God, bearing the name of Apollo, was the son of Jupiter and Latona, and to him all the actions of the others seem to have been attributed. Thus Apollo was born in the floating island of Delos. Hence the sanctity of the island.

**Aquinas, St. Thomas**,—called the "Angelic Doctor" was born of a noble Italian family, and entered into the society of Preaching Friars at Naples, against the inclination of his parents. After teaching divinity in various universities, he settled at Naples, and obtained a pension from the king. He refused the archbishopric of Naples, which was offered him by Pope Clement IV. B. in the castle of Aquino, Italy, 1224, D. at the monastery of Fossanova, near Terracina, 1274.

**Aristotle**,—the great founder of the peripatetic sect of philosophers, was born at Stagira in Thrace, B. C. 384. At the age of 17, he became a pupil of Plato who called him the "*mind*" of his school. The fame of his abilities having reached Philip of Macedon, that prince made him tutor to his son, Alexander the Great. When Alexander set out on his expeditions to Asia, Aristotle returned to Athens and obtained leave to occupy the Lyceum, as a school of philosophy. Envy of his abilities caused him to be accused of impiety, and he retired to Chalcis, where he remained till his death, in the 63d year of his age, in B. C. 323. His writings are numerous and various, and of the art of logic, he may almost be called the inventor.

**Aurelius St. Augustine**,—the greatest of the Latin fathers, was born at Tagaste, a town of Numidia in Africa, on November 13, 354 A. D. In 371 his father sent him to Carthage, where he taught rhetoric with great reputation. Wearied with his African life, Augustine removed to Rome, and was appointed Professor of Rhetoric at Milan. He was baptised in 387, and the next year, he was ordained a priest on his return to Africa. He died in 430 A. D. His writings have always been held in veneration by the Roman Catholic Church, and from them was constructed that system commonly designated Scholastic divinity.

"He pronounces the doctrine of antipodes to be incompatible with the historical foundations of our faith, since, to assert that there are inhabited lands on the opposite side of the globe, would be to maintain that these nations were not descended from Adam, it being impossible for them to have passed the intervening ocean. This would be, therefore, to discredit the Bible, which expressly declares that all men are descended from one common parent."

**Azurara**,—Gomes Eannes de Azurara, a Portuguese historian of the 15th century, was the author of "Chronicle of Prince Henry's discovery and conquest of Guinea," drawn up in 1448, "Chronicle of the conquest of Ceuta" and the "Chronicles of Dom Pedro and Dom Duarte de Meneses."



the first governors of the place. The dates of the birth and death of Azurara are entirely unknown

## B

**Bacon, Francis**,—an eminent statesman, and still more eminent philosopher, son of the Lord-keeper, Sir Nicholas Bacon, by his second wife. During the reign of Elizabeth, he made no great progress, but on the accession of James I, he was knighted, and made one of the king's counsel. In the following year he was made Solicitor-General; and during the 14 years following, he continued to rise till he became High Chancellor of Great Britain, Baron Verulam, and Viscount St Alban's. His fall was as sudden as his rise had been great, being accused of corruption in his office, he was dismissed and heavily fined; and though he was subsequently noticed by Charles I, he spent the remainder of his life in obscurity. It is rather as a philosopher and the introducer of the Inductive Method of Inquiry than as a statesman that he demands our admiration. His works are invaluable, and too numerous to be mentioned here, but if none of them existed but his *Novum Organon Scientiarum*, he would have earned himself a deathless name. He was born in 1561, and died 1626.

(1) Just on entering life, he took to the practice of Law, which was rather very dull, and afterwards it was long before he could obtain promotion in the public service. This want of success was chiefly owing to the hostility of his uncle, the Queen's First Minister, Lord Burleigh, who regarded him as a dangerous rival to his own son. To Lord Burleigh and to his son, Bacon, in the hope of advancement, had paid court till it was clear no favour was to be expected from them, when he betook himself to their rival, the Earl of Essex, whose friendship he speedily won and who had so largely obliged and confided in him.

(2) Till the accession of King James, Bacon made little advance either in reputation or in fortune. Not only was Bacon content to present an almost impious kind of flattery to his weak sovereign,

but he stooped to become the minion of a minion, namely, Villiers, Duke of Buckingham, who had been recently raised from obscurity to the highest court honours, merely on account of his possessing a handsome person. By such means, and by writing to the king a letter studiously depreciating all the other great lawyers of his day, he obtained the highest offices and honours in his life.

**Beda or Bede, the Venerable**,—an ancient English writer whose fame for learning was so great that Pope Sergius invited him to Rome, but Beda declined the honour. He devoted the whole of his life to writing his "*Ecclesiastical History*" and other works, and to instructing the young monks. He was born at Wearmouth, Durham, in 672, and died in 735.

**Bahaim, Martin**,—a German geographer and navigator, who is said to have discovered the isle of Fayal and the Brazils, and to have sailed as far as the straits of Magellan, but this is doubtful. John II, king of Portugal created him a knight. There is at Nourernberg, a very curious globe made by him, on which are traced his discoveries. Born at Nourernberg, 1436, and died at Lisbon, in 1506.

**Borgia, Alexander**,—(see Alexander VI.)

**Bossi**,—Luigi Bossi—an Italian archæologist and historian, was born at Milan, in February, 1785. He became a canon of the Cathedral of Milan, but when the French entered Italy, he took the side of the invaders, and was appointed by Napoleon Bonaparte agent of the French government at Turin, and afterwards prefect of the archives of the kingdom of Italy. He died at Milan, 10th April, 1835. He was an extremely prolific writer, and produced more than 80 works, great and small, including theological and religious works, essays on antiquarian subjects, historic works, and works on fine arts, tragedies, comedies, &c. The work referred to in the text, is his *Researches concerning Christopher Columbus*, which was published at Milan, in 1818.

**Brunelleschi, Philip**,—(pronounced, *Broo-nail-lars-ke*) an Italian architect, who erected the dome of the Cathedral at Florence, which Michael Angelo pronounced a work of uncommon beauty. He was patronised by the Medici family, for whom he built some magnificent structures. He was also an excellent engineer, and skilled in military architecture. Born at Florence, 1377, and died, 1444.

## C

**Cæsar—Cæsar the first**,—or Cains Julius Cæsar, the first Roman Emperor and one of the greatest men that even Rome ever produced. At the early age of 16, he lost his father, who was a Prætor; and very shortly after that event, he married Cornelia, the daughter of Cornelius Cinna, the friend of Marius. This connexion gave great offence to the powerful Sylla, who caused Cæsar to be proscribed but was afterwards induced to exempt him from proscription. Having distinguished himself as an orator, he speedily grew a public favourite, and became successively military tribune, quæstor, and ædile. Having united with Pompey and Crassus in the memorable coalition called "the first trimvirate," he became consul, and then obtained the government of Gaul with the command of four legions. His military career was rapid and brilliant. Belgians, Helvetians, and Nervians succumbed to him, the German tribes were repulsed, and Gaul was wholly subjected to the Roman power. These transactions and his invasions of Britain are beautifully related in his work.—*The commentaries*. His successes excited the jealousy of Pompey who had influence enough in the Senate to cause Cæsar to be recalled from Gaul. He refused to obey this order, and marched with his army into Italy, Pompey retiring into Greece. Having seized the public treasury, and commissioned Mark Antony to watch over his interests in Rome, he proceeded to Spain where he defeated a large army which remained there in Pompey's interest. On his return to Rome, he was declared dictator. He then followed Pompey into Greece, and defeated him in the memorable battle of Pharsalia, from which Pompey escaped only to be assassinated in Egypt. As the great body of the Roman people dazzled by his military genius, and gratified by his munificence, were insensible of, or indifferent to, his insatiable thirst for domination, it is more than probable that he would have become an absolute King but that Brutus and other republicans penetrated his designs. Notwithstanding dark hints had been given to him of his danger, he attended a meeting of the senate without taking any measures for the safety of his person, and fell beneath the daggers of the conspirators, on the Ides of March, in the year 43 B C.

**Camoens, Lewis**,—the most celebrated poet of Portugal, who entered the army, and served with great reputation in Africa against the Moors. Soon after his return to Portugal, he engaged in an expedition to the East Indies, where he wrote a great part of his famous poem, the *Lusiad*. On his passage home, he suffered shipwreck, but preserved the MS of his poem, which was published in 1569. Born at Lisbon, 1527, and died, 1579. This great genius led a very miserable life. He dedicated his *Lusiad* to the young king Sebastian, who was very gracious, but nevertheless all the real patronage bestowed upon Camoens consisted of a very small pension (about £4), and permission to remain at the court of Lisbon. Even this small pittance was taken away after the death of Sebastian, and Camoens was left in such poverty that a faithful Italian servant begged in the streets of Lisbon for the support of the great epic poet of Portugal. **Camoens had therefore a very bitter experience of the wearisomeness of a suitor's life at a great man's court.**

**Cassandra**,—daughter of Priam and Hecuba, was passionately loved by Apollo, who promised to grant her, whatever she might require, if she would gratify his passion. She asked the power of knowing futurity; and as soon as she had received it, she broke her promise and slighted Apollo. The God, in his disappointment, wetted her lips with his tongue, and by this action effected that no credit or reliance should ever be put upon her predictions, however true or faithful they might be. She was looked upon by the Trojans as insane, and she was even confined, and her predictions were disregarded. She was courted by many princes during the Trojan War. When Troy was taken she fled for shelter to the temple of Minerva, where Ajax found her, and offered her violence, at the foot of Minerva's statue. Agamemnon then took her as his wife, and returned with her to Greece. She repeatedly foretold to him that his wife would put him to death. He gave no credit to this, and on his return to Argos, he was assassinated by his wife Clytemnestra. Cassandra shared his fate, and saw all her prophecies but too truly fulfilled.

**Cervantes de Saavedra, Miguel**,—the celebrated Spanish novelist was born in 1547. Although he gave early promise of literary talent, he was compelled, through poverty, to become a page to the cardinal Giulio Aquaviva in Rome. He then entered the navy, and lost his left arm at the famous battle of Lepanto. After this, he joined the troops at Naples in the service of the Spanish king, but returning homeward, he was taken prisoner by a corsair, and remained in slavery at Algiers for 5 years. When he was at length ransomed, he settled at Madrid, married, and published in 10 years about 30 dramas, but abandoned this species of composition for that which has immortalised his name—the production of *Don Quixote*. Though received with enthusiasm, *Don Quixote* brought no pecuniary reward to the author. He was left in the obscurity and poverty in which he had passed so many years, and vainly endeavoured to improve his circumstances. Near the close of his career, Cervantes found a patron in the Count of Lemos, who relieved his poverty. He died in Madrid, April 23, 1616.

**Cortes**,—Hernando Cortes, the conqueror of Mexico, a celebrated Spanish adventurer, whose family was respectable, but not opulent. He was bred at Salamanca, to the law, which he renounced to follow a soldier's life. The governor of Hispaniola was his relation, and Cortes, in 1504, went to St Domingo, where he was appointed to several valuable posts. In 1511 he accompanied Velasquez in his expedition to Cuba, and displayed so much skill and bravery in the conquest of that island, that he was chosen to conduct a similar enterprise for the conquest of Mexico. He was born at Medellin a village of Estremadura, 1485 and died near Seville, 1547.

D

**David**,—King of Israel, the ninth and youngest son of Jesse, belonged to the tribe of Judah. The many-sided

experience of life made the *Psalms of David* the most precious heritage of the afflicted and tried in all ages of the Christian Church

**Dido**,—also called Elissa, queen and founder of Carthage, was the daughter of Belus, king of Tyre. She married Sichæus, priest of Hercules, who for the sake of his riches, was murdered by Pygmalion, the successor of Belus. Dido disconsolate at the loss of her husband, sailed with a number of Tyrians, and settled on the coast of Africa, where she purchased a tract of land, on which she built a citadel, called Byrsa. Her beauty, as well as the fame of her enterprise, gained her many admirers, and her subjects wished to compel her to marry Jarbas, king of Mauritania, who threatened them with a dreadful war. Dido begged three months to give her decisive answer; and in the interval, caused a funeral pyre to be erected, on which she stabbed herself in the presence of her subjects. By this uncommon action obtained the name of Dido, *valiant woman*, instead of Elissa. According to Virgil and Ovid, the death of Dido was caused by the sudden departure of Æneas, of whom she was deeply enamoured, and whom she could not obtain as a husband.

## F

**Ferdinand V.**,—King of Arragon, surnamed the Catholic, on account of the expulsion of the Moors from Spain, was the son of John II of Arragon, and born in 1453. By his marriage with Isabella, queen of Castile, he founded the union of the different Spanish kingdoms, overcame Alphonso, king of Portugal, at the battle of Toro, in 1476, totally subjugated the Moorish power in Spain, which had for so many centuries baffled all the efforts of his ancestors, and brought under his rule a large portion of the Neapolitan dominions. But the most extraordinary feature in his reign was the discovery of America by Columbus, which opened to him and his successors the sovereignty of a new hemisphere. He died in 1516, having, by a course of sinistrous policy, lost the respect of his contemporaries, although the splendour of his arms placed him at the head of European princes.

## G

**Gama, Vasco de**,—an illustrious Portuguese navigator, to whom belongs the merit of having discovered the route to the East Indies by sea. In 1497, Emanuel, king of Portugal, sent him to endeavour to double the Cape of Good Hope, which he accomplished, and then sailed along the eastern coast of Africa, having proceeded as far as Calicut where he arrived in May, 1498, and was received by the prince of that place with great pomp and ceremony. In 1524, he was appointed by John III, viceroy of Portuguese India, being the first who held that title, but he did not long survive his honours after his arrival at his destination. Died at Cochim, 1525. Camoens celebrated his adventures in the "Lusiad"

## H.

**Helps, Arthur**,—"Poet, Essayist, Novelist, and Miscellaneous writer," was the fourth and youngest son of Thomas Helps, a merchant. He was born on the 10th of July, 1813 and was educated at Eton and at Trinity College, Cambridge. He had been the private secretary to Mr. Spring Rice, afterwards Lord Monteagle, then Chancellor of the Exchequer, and subsequently to Lord Morpeth, then Chief Secretary of State for Ireland. In 1860 he was appointed clerk of the Privy Council. In 1872 he was created a K. C. B. He died on the 7th of March, 1875 when he was 62 years old.

The following is a list of his principal works with the date of their publication —(1) *Thoughts in the Cloister and the Crowd*, 1835, (2) *Essays written in the Intervals of Business*, 1841, (3) *Friends in council*, 1841, 1859, (4) *King Henry II*, an historical drama, 1843, (5) *Catherine Douglas*, a tragedy, 1843, (6) *The Claims of Labour*, 1845; (7) *Companions of my solitude*, 1851, (8) *A history of the Spanish Conquest of America*, 1855—61, (9) *Oulita, the Serf*, 1858, (10) *Realmah*, 1869, (11) *Life of Pizarro*, 1869, (12) *Casimir Maremma*, 1870, (13) *Brevia* Short Essays and Aphorisms 1870, (14) *Conversations on War and General Culture*, 1871, (15) *Thoughts upon Governments*, 1871, (16) *Life of Cortez*, 1871, (17) *Iran de Biron*, 1874, (18) and *Social Pleasure*, 1874.

Among the above works, *Friends in Council* and *Companions of my Solitude*—both collections of short essays on various social subjects—and *Realmah* a description of an imaginary kingdom of the bronze age, are the only three that stand out as being better known and more likely to outlive the others

Helps's *Spanish Conquest in America* was written with a view to illustrate the history of slavery and to stimulate the Americans to stamp out slavery. The most important work of his life was that of a social reformer. His constant aim was to elevate the condition of the poor and helpless classes of the community, and he was always in the habit of arousing the interest of the cultured and influential sections of society in the condition of those less fortunate than themselves. In all his works, he kept this end steadily in view.

**Henry VII.**,—was the son of Edmund, Earl of Richmond, and Margaret, of the house of Lancaster. He united the house of York and Lancaster by marrying Elizabeth, daughter of Edward IV. His reign as king of England met with little disturbance, except from two imposters, set up by Lady Margaret, sister to Edward IV. One was a joiner's son, called Lambert Simnel, who pretended to be the young Earl of Warwick, son of George, Duke of Clarence, and the daughter of the "King Maker." The other was Perkin Warbeck, who personated Richard, Duke of York, younger son of Edward IV, who along with his brother, Edward V., is generally believed to have been murdered in the Tower by Richard III. Henry reigned 24 years, and greatly increased trade and commerce. Born at Pembroke castle 1456, died at Richmond, 1509.

**Hercules**,—a Grecian hero, possessed of the utmost amount of physical strength and vigour that the human frame is capable of. He was the son of Jupiter and Alcmena, and was ranked among the gods, after his death, and received divine honors. The Pythian told him if he would serve Eurystheus for 12 years, he should become immortal; accordingly he bound himself to the Argive king who imposed upon him twelve (12) tasks of great difficulty and danger —(See Notes on Text, P. 19) ,



**Herrera**.—Antonio Herrera de Tordesillas, was born in 1565. He received an excellent education and entered into the employ of Vespesian Gonzago brother to the Duke of Mantua who was viceroy of Naples for Philip II. of Spain. He was afterwards grand histriographer of the Indies to Philip II., and wrote many books, of which the most celebrated is a *General History of the Indies or American colonies*. He died in 1625, at sixty years of age.

**Homer**.—the most ancient and celebrated of the Greek poets, but of whose birth-place, station in life, and actual existence, the most diverse opinions are held by the learned of modern times. According to the generally accepted tradition, he was born in Smyrna, and having conceived the idea of his "Iliad," he travelled in order to gain knowledge of men, and localities for his great work. In his old age, he became blind, and was compelled to earn his bread by wandering from city to city reciting his verses. Homer's greatest works are two epic poems, the "Iliad" and the "Odyssey." After his death, seven different cities, claimed the honour of being the birth-place of Homer.

# I

**Irving, Washington**.—a distinguished American author, whose parentage on both sides was English. He crossed the Atlantic, and visited France, Italy, Switzerland, Holland and England. After having travelled over England, he commenced his "Sketch Book," forwarding his manuscript in instalments to New York, where it was published. In 1826, he set out for Madrid for examining some important documents relative to Columbus, which had just been discovered in a Jesuit College in that city. His researches resulted in the publication of several of his most popular books,—the "History of the Life and Voyages of Columbus," the "Voyages and Discoveries of the Companions of Columbus," the "Conquest of Granada," &c. He filled many important public offices, and wrote some other well-known books. Born, at New York, 1713, died, at Sunnyside, 1859.

**Isaac**.—son of Abraham by Sarah and the progenitor of the Israelites.

**Isabella** of Castile, queen of Spain, was the daughter of John II, and married, in 1469, Ferdinand the fifth, king of Aragon. The conquest of Granada, and the discovery of America by Columbus, distinguished their reign. She was a woman of great abilities. Born 1450, died, 1504.

**Isidro**—or **St. Isidore**,—Bishop of Seville, a celebrated Spanish prelate, and one of the most learned men of his time, wrote a number of books on Biblical and classical subjects, and some commentaries on the Old and New Testaments. He was born at Carthagená, in 566, and died in 636.

## J

**John, Prester**,—(Priest John) the supposed Christian king and priest of a mediæval kingdom in the interior of Asia, the locality of which was vague and undefined. In the 11th and 12th centuries, the Nestorian missionaries penetrated into Eastern Asia, and made many converts among the Kitan Tartars, including the Khan or Sovereign of the tribe, Ung Khan, who resided at Karakorum, and to whom the afterwards celebrated Genghis Khan was tributary. Genghis Khan having thrown off his allegiance, a war ensued which ended in the defeat and death of Ung Khan, in 1202. Efforts were made to find out the locality and other particulars of such a supposed personage, but it was found that the accounts were monstrously exaggerated. Under the same vague notion of the existence of a Christian prince and a Christian kingdom in the East, the Portuguese sought for traces of Prester John, in their newly acquired Indian territory in the 15th century.

**John I, King of Portugal**,—was the natural son of Peter, and in 1383 ascended the throne, to the prejudice of Beatrice, daughter of Ferdinand I, his brother. John I, king of Castile, the husband of that princess, disputed the crown, but was defeated at the battle of Aljubarota in 1385. He then turned his arms against the Moors of Africa and took Ceuta and other places. He died in 1433.

**John of Gaunt, or Ghent, Duke of Lancaster**,—was the third son of Edward III, king of England. He took for his second wife, Constance, a natural daughter

of Peter the Cruel, king of Castile and Leon, and on the death of that monarch, laid claim to the throne in right of his wife, but without success. He served with great glory in France, with his brother, the Black Prince. In 1386, his only daughter was married to the heir-apparent of the king of Castile, and John renounced his claim to that Crown, in consideration of a considerable sum and a pension. John of Gaunt was a man of great valour, prudence and generosity. His son afterwards became king of England by the title of Henry IV. Born at Ghent, 1340, died, 1399.

**John the Second of Portugal**,—John II succeeded his father Alphonso V, in 1481. He gained some places in Africa and distinguished himself in the battle of Toro against the Castilians, in 1476. He encouraged navigation, and it was during his reign that Bernal Diaz sailed round the Cape of Good Hope, he also despatched colonies to India. Born, 1455, died, 1495.

**John of Anjou**,—son of king Rene of Provence

**Lactantius, Lucius Cælius Firmianus**,—an eloquent Father of the Church, was, according to some, an African, and to others, a native of Fermo, in Italy. Constantine appointed him preceptor to his son Crispus. He wrote with great purity and force, and formed his style upon that of Cicero. Lived at the end of the 3rd and beginning of the 4th century.

**Las Casas**,—Bartolome de Las Casas, Bishop of Chiapa, in Mexico, surnamed the *Apostle of the Indians*, a celebrated evangelist and philanthropist, was of French descent, and was born in Seville in 1474. In 1502, he accompanied Don Nicholas Ovando, who was sent out as governor, to St Domingo. In Cuba, he began to signalise himself by his exertions in favour of the oppressed Indians. In the course of his ardent career, he crossed the Atlantic sixteen times, in order to advocate in Spain the cause of the natives of the West Indies who were almost extirpated by the toils to which they were subjected. The colonists received him with no friendly feelings, and as he refused the sacraments to those who disregarded

the new laws in favour of the Indians, he drew upon himself not only the resentment of the planters, but the disapprobation of the Church, so that he was compelled to return to Spain, where he ended his life in a convent in Madrid, in July 1566 at the age of 92.

**Louis IX** called **St. Louis**,—the son of Louis VIII of France by Blanche of Castile, ascended the throne in 1226. He maintained a successful war against Henry III, king of England, which ended in a peace favourable to Louis, who having been seized with a dangerous illness, made a vow that, if he recovered, he would take the cross for the purpose of regaining the Holy Land from the infidels. Being restored to health, he spent four years in preparing for this expedition, and, in 1248, embarked for the east with a great force, leaving his kingdom to the care of his mother. After taking Damietta, he passed the Nile, and obtained two great victories over the Saracens but sustaining defeat latterly, he returned to France. He undertook another expedition against the infidels, but died in his camp before Tunis, in Africa, the same year. He was canonized in 1297. He was born at Poissy, in 1215.

**Louis XI.**,—son of Charles VII, distinguished himself by the valour in his youth, particularly against the English, whom he compelled to raise the siege Dieppe, in 1443, but the glory he hereby acquired was tarnished by his rebelling against his father, who died of a broken heart in 1461. Louis, on ascending the throne, treated France as a conquered country, for which several of the nobility formed a league against him, and some of his own family joined the malcontents. After a severe but indecisive battle at Montlheri, in 1465, peace was concluded by which Louis gave to the leaguers all their demands. His most prominent trait, however, was, duplicity of disposition, his constant maxim being, "He who cannot dissemble knows not how to reign." But, by protecting the middle classes and favouring industry, he was a benefactor of his country. B. 1423, D. 1483.

**M.**

**Martin V**,—(Otho Colonna) was elected Pope in 1417

after the abdication of John XXIII and of the antipopes Benedict and Gregory He persecuted the followers of Huss in Bohemia and presided at a Council of Constance, in 1418 Died in 1431

**Martyr, Peter**,—an Italian diplomatist, who was employed by Ferdinand V, king of Castile and Aragon, in the education of his children He also obtained some ecclesiastical benefices and wrote a history of the discovery of America in Latin, and a collection of letters relating to the history of Spain He was a contemporary and an intimate acquaintance of Columbus Born, in 1455, died, 1523

**Machiavelli, Niccolò del**,—a celebrated Italian politician and writer, who came of a poor but old family of the Florentine Republic, and became secretary and historiographer of the Republic of Florence,—an office he lost in 1512, when the Medici family re-entered the city A year afterwards he was accused of being concerned in a conspiracy against the Medici, and was put to torture He was subsequently released according to a pardon sent from Rome by Leo X He resided during several years in privacy, and occupied himself with the composition of most of his many works In 1521 he was employed by the Medici on several important missions He wrote, among other works, "*The Golden Ass*," "*History of Florence*", and the world-famed political treatise, entitled "*The Prince*" He was born at Florence, in 1469 and died in 1527.

**Maundeville, Sir John**,—an English traveller, was born at St Alban's about the beginning of the 14th century, left his native country in 1332, spent 34 years in visiting various places, and on his return, published an account of his travels, but the wonders he describes have thrown such an air of improbability over his narrative, as to stagger the belief of the most credulous He died at Liege, in 1372

**Milton**,—see any edition of *Comus*

**Moses**,—prophet and legislator of the Israelites, born about 1600 B C, in Egypt (Helopolis) during the period of their bondage His father was Amram, his mother Jochebed, both of the tribe of Levi Many miracles

are attributed to him. He is believed to have frequently been in communion with the Almighty. He was commanded by God to deliver the Israelites from their servitude under the Egyptian Pharaoh. (For a description of the manner in which he conducted the Israelites safe through Egypt and across the Red Sea, see Notes on page 210, under—"*What did he more, &c., for the great people of Israel, &c.*") He died upon the Mount of Nebo, 120 years old, in full vigour of manhood, and "no man knew his burial-place up to this day"

## O

**Ovid**,—(Publius Ovidius Naso), a celebrated Latin poet, was sent at an early age to Rome, to receive his education under the best teachers. He made considerable progress in eloquence; but poetry had more charms for him than the art of pleading. On settling at Rome, his accomplishments procured him many friends, particularly Augustus, who however, ordered him to be banished to the banks of the Euxine Sea in 8 A. D. The occasion of his disgrace is variously related: some assert that it was for writing his "*Art of Love*", others say that it was for an intrigue with Livia, the wife of Augustus, and others again maintain that the true cause of Ovid's banishment was his attachment to the Emperor's own daughter, Julia. Despite the most earnest entreaties of the poet and his friends, Augustus would never consent to his recall. The works of Ovid extant are his "*Metamorphosis*", "*The Art of Love*", *Elegies*, *Epistles* and *Fragments*. Born at Sulmo, 43 B. C.; died at Tomi, on the Euxine, 18 A. D.

## P

**Paul, St.**—the Great Apostle of the Gentiles, was born of Jewish parents at Tarsus, in Cilicia. His original name was Saul. He travelled extensively in order to preach the Gospel, and was at last one of the victims of the great fire of Rome during the time of Nero, about 67 A. D. His *Epistles* to the Corinthians, Galatians, Ephesians, Romans, Philippians, Colossians, Thessalonians, Timothy, Titus, Philemon and the Hebrews are well-

**Pizarro, Francisco**,—the conqueror of Peru, was the illegitimate son of a gentleman in Truxillo, and being left entirely dependent on his mother, a peasant girl, he received no education, and was, in his early years, employed as a swineherd. Quitting this inglorious occupation, he embarked, with some other adventurers, for America; and in 1524, associated at Panama with Diego de Almagro and Hernandez Lucque, a priest, in an enterprise to make discoveries. In this voyage they fell in with the coast of Peru, but being too few to make any attempt at a settlement, Pizarro returned to Spain, where all that he gained was a power from the court to prosecute his object. In 1535, Pizarro laid the foundation of Lima. In 1537, he defeated and executed Almagro, who had become jealous of his power; but in 1541, he was himself assassinated in his own palace by the son and friends of Almagro.

**Plutarch**,—a celebrated Greek biographer and moralist, was born at Choeronea, in Bœotia, about 48 A. D. He travelled extensively, viz., into Egypt, Greece, Italy, &c. During his residence in Rome, he delivered lectures in Greek on philosophy, and enjoyed the friendship of Lucan, the Younger Pliny and others. The most celebrated of his works are his "*Lives of Illustrious Men*," and his "*Morals*." He died at an advanced age at his native place.

**Polo, Marco**,—a celebrated old Venetian traveller, whose father and uncle left Venice in 1250 for Constantinople, travelled up the Euxine and afterwards proceeded to Bokhara, where they acquired the Mongal language, and thence to the court of Kublai Khan, in Chinese Tartary. The Venetians were well received by Kublai, who commissioned them to carry a letter to the Pope, in which he asked that a hundred learned men might be sent into his dominions. They arrived safely at Venice in 1269, after an absence of nineteen years. In 1272, the two brothers, and Marco Polo, the son of Nicolo, together with two Dominican friars, again set forth into the interior of Asia from the coast of Syria; but the friars becoming too frightened to proceed, left the three Venetians to prosecute, by themselves, their journey into Central Asia. In 1275 they

arrived at the camp of Kublai Khan, who soon afterwards despatched Marco Polo on several missions to China and India; and Marco was thus the first European who visited China. In 1291, the three Venetians were permitted to accompany an embassy to Persia, and after travelling through China, they embarked at Fo-Kien, and sailed thence for Persia. From Persia they set sail for Venice, which they reached in 1295. Venice was, at that period, at war with Genoa, and Marco Polo was placed in command of one of the war-galleys of the State, but being taken prisoner, was conveyed to Genoa. While in captivity he dictated to a fellow-prisoner the narrative of his adventures. The work was published at Venice in 1559. Marco Polo was born about 1250, died about 1323.

**Ptolemy.**—**Claudius Ptolemæus**,—a celebrated astronomer and geographer, was a native of Egypt. Nothing is known of his personal history, except that he flourished in Alexandria in 139 A. D., and there is probable evidence of his having been alive in 161 A. D. He is celebrated from his *System of the World*, in which he placed the earth as the centre of the system, round which the sun, the planets and the stars revolved. His *Geography* describes the whole world, as it was known in his day, and was the great text-book of the science it treats of, until the 15th century, when the discoveries of the Venetians and the Portuguese demonstrated its errors. He also constructed a series of 26 maps, together with a general map of the world, in illustration of his work.

**Rene of Provence**,—or Renatus I, surnamed “the Good,” titular king of Naples and Sicily, the son of Louis II, Duke of Anjou and Count of Provence, was born in 1408 at Augers. He made fruitless attempts to make good his claims to the great Neapolitan heritage and to the rich territories of Lorraine; at last he retired to his hereditary dominions in Provence, and devoted himself to the cultivation of poetry and painting, in both of which he showed a degree of proficiency. He was the father-in-law of Henry VI, King of England, and from him obtained the restitution of Anjou and Maine, which had



remained in the hands of the English since the successful war of Henry V. He died in 1480, universally regretted by his subjects, among whom the memory of "the good king Rene" was long held in great veneration.—(See Notes on Text)

## R

**Rogers Samuel**,—an eminent English poet, was the son of a London banker, in whose house of business he was placed, after having received an efficient private education. From his earliest years he had a predilection for poetry. He was born at Newington Green near London, 1753, and died, 1855. The following is a list of Rogers's principal works with the dates of their publication —*Ode to Superstition, and other Poems* (1786), *The Pleasures of Memory* (1792), *An Epistle to a friend* (1798), *Columbus* (1812), *Jacqueline* (1814); *Human Life* (1819), and *Italy* (1822)

## S

**Sarah**,—was the wife of Abraham, and mother of Isaac. (See *Abraham*, and Notes on Text, p 240)

**Scotus, Duns. Duns, John**,—commonly called "**Duns Scotus**," a famous Franciscan divine, who was educated at Oxford. In 1301, he became professor of Theology at Oxford, and was so distinguished by his eloquence, that it is said 30,000 scholars came to listen to his precepts. In 1304, he went to Paris, where he acquired great reputation as a disputant. It is supposed that he was born at Dunstance, Northumberland, in 1265, and died at Cologne in 1308.

**Seneca, Lucius Annæus**,—a celebrated Roman philosopher, moralist, and statesman, the son of Marcus Annæus, an eminent orator, was born at Cordova, in Spain, during the first year of the Christian era. His various learning and practical wisdom caused him to be appointed tutor to Nero, and procured him several important places. After his accession to the throne, his imperial pupil for a while loaded him with favours, but at length the tyrant charged him with being an accom-

plice in the conspiracy of Piso, and he was condemned to death His death happened in A. D 65.

**Shakespeare, William.**—The greatest of English poets, and one of the greatest, perhaps the greatest, of the whole world, lived in Queen Elizabeth's reign This illustrious dramatic poet of England was born at Stratford-upon-Avon, April 23, 1564, and was the son of a dealer in wool In his 18th year, he married Ann Hathaway, a farmer's daughter, who was considerably older than himself In London, whither he repaired to try his fortune, he formed an acquaintance with the players, and was enrolled among them **Queen Elizabeth** had several of his plays acted before her, and without doubt gave him many marks of her favour His greatest patron was the Earl of Southampton, who is said, on one occasion, to have presented him with £1000; and he enjoyed the friendship of his most eminent literary contemporaries Having become proprietor and manager of the Globe Theatre, he realised a handsome fortune, which enabled him to purchase a house and estate at his native town Shakespeare died on his 52nd birth-day, in 1616 and was buried in the Church of Stratford, where his monument still remains In 1741 a monument was erected to him in Westminster Abbey. Besides his immortal plays, which are 37 in number, Shakespeare was the author of two poems,—*Venus Adonis*, and *Lucrece*

**Solomon**, was the second son and successor of David on the throne of the Israelitish empire for forty years (1015—975, B C) Nothing is known of his youth except that he was probably educated by Nathan He married as his principal wife the daughter of Pharaoh of the 21st dynasty. Besides her, he had a vast number of wives, 700 "princesses," and 300 "concubines" Having inherited fabulous wealth, it became necessary that a new organization should be introduced Hence, "Princes," or great officers of state, and a body of legal advisers, were appointed The immense accumulation of

treasure also allowed the execution of a number of public works in Jerusalem which now first assumed the magnificence and station of a capital. The country was in the profoundest peace, and the popularity of the king, who listened to the meanest of his subjects, and gave judgment according to his wisdom which has remained proverbial from his day to ours, was naturally at first very great. Manned with Tyrian sailors, the fleets of Solomon went to *Ophir*, and brought back "gold, silver, apes, peacocks, ivory and spices," and the rest of the strange and precious produce of India, Africa, Spain and other regions. The fame of Solomon could not but spread far and wide. Apart from the splendour of his court, he had personal qualities,—his wisdom and his erudition of a high order,—for he was not only the wisest, but also the most learned of men. But towards the end of his life, his popularity waned, his wisdom turned into folly, and his justice into tyranny. He was the prime cause of the downfall of the Jewish common-wealth, and his was a sad example of a genius gone astray.

**Souza**,—Manuel Faria Souza—a Portuguese poet, statesman and historian who was at first engaged in various diplomatic capacities, but subsequently devoted himself to literature. His principal works are, a vast collection of sonnets, "Commentary on the *Lusiad*," "Epitome of the History of Portugal," and an account of the labours of the Jesuit missionaries in China. Born at Sonto, in Portugal, 1590, died, at Madrid, 1649.

**Spenser, Edmund**,—An eminent English poet, whose earliest poem was the "*Shepherd's Calendar*," published in 1579, which he dedicated to Sir Philip Sidney, who became his patron, and introduced him at court. In 1580 he was appointed by the Earl of Leicester Secretary to Lord Grey, Viceroy of Ireland, and obtained a grant of lands in the county of Cork, where he built a house and finished his celebrated poem entitled the *Faerie Queene*. In the rebellion begun by the Earl of Tyrone, he lost his estate, and was plundered, upon which he retired to London. He was buried near Chaucer, in

Westminster Abbey. Born in London, 1553, and died in London, 1599. *A B*—**Spenser** was a suitor for royal favour at the court of Queen Elizabeth.

**Strabo**,—a celebrated Greek historian and geographer was born at Amasia in Cappadocia, about 19 A. D., and travelled through Greece, Italy, Egypt' and Asia, endeavouring to obtain the most accurate information in regard to the geography, statistics, and political conditions of the countries he visited. The time of his death is unknown. His great geographical work, in 17 books, contains a full account of the manners and governments of different people. In his "Geography," he stated that the habitable world was surrounded by water, and that in length it was about double its breadth.

# T

**Thetis**—one of the sea-deities, daughter of Nereus and Doris. She was married with Peleus, the son of Cæus. Thetis became mother of several children by Peleus, but all these she destroyed by fire in attempting to see whether they were immortal. Achilles, who became the great hero of the Trojan War, was alone snatched from her hand, as she was going to repeat the cruel operation.

**Tiberius Claudius Nero**,—a Roman Emperor who succeeded Augustus in 14 A. D. In his early years he commanded popularity, chiefly because he managed to restrain his evil propensities by his hypocrisy and retired mode of life. Tiberius, who was the step-son of Augustus, was adopted by the Emperor and nominated his heir. The beginning of his reign seemed to promise tranquillity to the empire, but Tiberius soon appeared in his real character. He made himself notorious by his cruelty to his mother Livia, and his wife Julia, and by the murder of many of the senators. He also caused Germanicus, his nephew and the most popular and the ablest general to be poisoned, and committed numerous other excesses. After the removal of all who were likely to put forth claims to the throne, Tiberius's real character became known. Not only his relations and friends, but the great and opulent were sacrificed to his ambition, cruelty and avarice, and

there was in Rome scarcely a single family that did not reproach Tiberius with the loss of a brother, a father or a husband. After his death, Caligula, his favourite and the son of Germanicus, was proclaimed Emperor. Tiberius was born at Rome in 42 B C, and died near Misenum in 37 A D. His maxim was — "He who knows not how to dissemble, knows not how to reign." King Louis XI of France adopted this as his motto.

**Titans**,—they were the sons of Coelus and Terra, (Heaven and Earth). The most known of the Titans are Saturn, Hyperion, Oceanus, Japetus, Briareus, &c. They were all of a gigantic stature, and with proportionable strength. The wars of the Titans against the gods are celebrated in mythology.

**Toscanelli, Paulo**,—a celebrated Italian astronomer, who erected, in the cathedral of Florence, the famous solstitial gnomon, which was accounted the greatest of the kind in Europe. Toscanelli is likewise said to have had some ideas of the passage to the East Indies by the Cape of Good Hope, and to have communicated them to Alphonso V of Portugal, and afterwards to Columbus. Born at Florence, 1397, died, 1482.

## V

**Voltaire—Francois-Marie Aronét de**,—a celebrated French writer who gave in his early years proofs of a lively genius. His irresistible turn for satire led to his being taken for the author of some lampoons upon king Louis XIV, for which he was sent to the Bastille, where he continued for a year. His tragedy *Œdipus*, published, in 1718, met with great success. Having produced some other plays, he was again imprisoned in the Bastille, and after 6 months, he recovered his liberty. Of his tragedies, his *Brutus*, *Zaru*, *Merope*, *Alzira* and *Mahomet*, were the most celebrated. He resided at Potsdam in Prussia, at the request of Frederick the great, for three years, but some difference having arisen between the king and himself, he quitted Prussia, and in 1778, he went to reside at Paris, where he was much honoured by the people. Born at Chatenay, 1694, and died at Paris, in 1778.

## APPENDIX II.

## MODEL QUESTIONS WITH ANSWERS.

## PREFACE.

I.—What is the popular view as to the nature and motive of Columbus's work? What, according to Helps, is the right view? (*Summary, Paras 4 and 5*)

II.—“The Arabs have a proverb that a man is more the son of the age in which he lives than of his own father”.

(a) What is the full significance of this statement?

(b) Show, after Helps, how far the above saying is applicable to the life of Columbus (*Summary, paras, 6—10, and Notes on them*)

Or,—Show how far Columbus was a “product of his age”

Or,—Illustrate the statement —“Columbus had all the spirit of a crusader, and at the same time, the investigating nature of a modern man of science”

III.—“Perhaps it will be found that a very great man seldom does belong to his period, as other men do to theirs” What does Helps mean by “a very great man,” and other men? In this classification, what position does he assign to Columbus and to Machiavelli, and why? (*Summary, para 8, and Text, footnote, P X*)

IV.—“The whole life of Columbus shows how rarely men of the greatest insight and foresight, and also of the greatest perseverance, attain the exact ends they aim at”, Illustrate the statement (*Text Para 11*)

V.—What are the current speculations regarding the possible aspects of his great proceedings from the slightest change of circumstances? (*Summary, paras 12, 13*)

VI.—Describe the causes of the downfall of the Spanish dominion in America (*Summary, paras 14, 15*)

VII.—Explain —

(a) We are apt to that continent, to the unknown (P. viii)

(b) At a time when there was more of worldliness

Alexander Borgia . Saint Louis . crusade. . (P. ix)

(c) Again, at a time when . tyranny . . (P ix.)

(d) When science was more dogmatic than theology, . (P ix.)

(e) The man who is too closely . these first principles... (P. x.)

- (f) He was a un-inquiring son of the Church (P x)  
 (g) Machiavelli was product of his age belonged to it (P x)  
 (h) In this respect all discoveries in Chemistry (P xi)  
 (i) He did not rebuild New World and the old (P xi)  
 (j) During that memorable future empires (P xii)  
 (k) On the other hand the English likely to behold (P. xiii.)

#### VIII.—Write short notes upon —

Kublai Khan, Prester John, The Angelic Doctor Inductive Philosophy A product of his age Perilous sea of theological investigations Soldierly theology of Columbus. Seeds of the greatest nation that the world is likely to behold Scene of action Compressing force.

### CHAPTER I.

I—Enumerate clearly the difficulties of navigation in the 15th century, and state also the circumstances that served as encouragements to expeditions of discovery, even in the face of these difficulties (*Summary, para 1, and paras 2—4*)

II—Give a sketch of the Mediæval map of the world (*Summary para 5*)

III—(1) Give an account of the geographical discoveries made under Prince Henry of Portugal in the 15th century (*Summary, Paras 7—35, omitting paras 15—16, 21—25, Management of Slave Trade and Authenticity of Cada Mosto's account in paras 26—33*)

(2) What were the motives of Prince Henry in undertaking the voyages of discovery? (*Summary, para 6*)

(3) Who was Cada Mosto? Give an account of the voyages made by him, and his impressions on what he had observed during them — (*Summary, Paras. 26—33, and Para 34*)

IV—Sketch briefly the character of Prince Henry (*Summary, paras 36—39*)

V—Compare the labours of Prince Henry with those of Columbus (*Summary, paras 56—57*)

VI—(1) Give a short account of the Portuguese discoveries made after Prince Henry's death (*Summary,*

paras 40-49 Omitting—"The discovery of the Cape of Good Hope,—a theme in fiction," and "The story of the Genius of the Cape of Good Hope.)

(2) Sketch briefly the story of Adamastor, the Genius of the Cape of Good Hope (*Summary paras 40-49*), from "The story of the Genius of the Cape of Good Hope.")

VII—Describe briefly the story of Bemoin, Prince of Jalof (*Summary, paras 50-55.*)

VIII—Explain fully —

- (a) And the maintenance had in view (P. 4)
- (b) Its days of penal settlement are yet to come (P. 5.)
- (c) The idea of the escaped the tyrant (P. 7.)
- (d) Many a Swiss peak the African coast (P. 14)
- (e) But now came stormy times of cosmography (P. 20)
- (f) Europe may be said circles widen (P. 22)
- (g) And then hope negative of some fear. (P. 24)
- (h) It was this temperament an actual fault in him (P. 33)
- (i) He was accordingly distributive justice (P. 33)
- (j) And one especially desertion in courage (P. 33)
- (k) This no doubt was heroic one .Caesar (P. 33)
- (l) And in the estimation as a commander (P. 33)
- (m) Then indeed, they might civilization world (P. 34)
- (n) And this search philosopher's stone chemistry (P. 35.)
- (o) Vast as that Apollo wonder of the world (P. 37)
- (p) Maledictions, which, their follow-men (P. 37)
- (q) The Genius of the Stormy Cape, prominence (P. 39)
- (r) But there can set the fashion of discovery (pp 45, 46)
- (s) Which have made his name ages (P. 46.)

IX.—Write short notes on —

Light of science and of experience Stagnant seas and fiery skies Flying islands The half-decked vessels To bear the brunt of Sextant Astrolabe The Compass *Omne ignotum pro magis* Heathen Efficiency of mere formal communion with the Church Love of adventure Craving for novelty Religious fanaticism Amazons Mystic islands Forms of a lower hemisphere Fountains of perpetual youth A mirage of names. Our infant world. That square massive-looking piece to the extreme south-east Its days of penal settlements and of golden fortunes Hippogriffs Plantagenet blood The memorable capture of Ceuta Fables of chivalry That forbidding negative Dream of promise Madena Porto Santo Plague of locusts Knights of Christ A virtuous obstinacy The needle and the chart A labour of Hercules Pro-



mixed land Stormy times for the Portuguese kingdom Sea-wolves  
 Plevary indulgence The poetry of life Dragons blood The  
 death of Prince Henry in 1463 Phlegmatic temperament Dis-  
 tributive justice *In quibus Omnibus interful* The *Lusiads* of  
 of Camoens That statue of Apollo The colossal wonder of the  
 world Titans Chorus of angels The vicissitudes of courts The  
 father of modern geographical discovery This raising the curtain  
 of the unknown Those beacon-fires, The Infante. "Fruit of the  
 spear" The Outstretcher

## CHAPTER II.

I. "The question of Columbus's birth-place has been almost as hotly contested as that of Homer's" Discuss this question and that of the date of his birth (*Summary, para 1, and Notes on Text, pp 47, 48*)

II Give an account of Columbus's education, the circumstances that led to the choice of his profession, and his early adventures (*Summary, paras 3, 4*).

III. What do you know of the early life of Columbus? (Calcutta University F. A. examination, 1878) *Summary of the whole Chapter*

IV Sketch briefly Columbus's personal appearance and character (*Summary paras 5—7*)

V. What was the nature of Columbus's "great idea"? What single circumstance did lead to it? (*Summary, para 8*) State, at some length, the authorities he relied on, in forming his theory or the grounds on which his theory was based (*Summary, paras 9—11*)

VI State the result of his application for help to (a) The Senate of Genoa, and (b) The Court of Portugal *Summary, Para 14*.

VII Discuss the question of Columbus's merit as a discoverer (*See Text, pp 54, 55, 56, para 8*)

VIII Explain —

- (a) The question of Columbus's as that of Homer's. (P 47)
- (b) A succession of pamphleteers .great navigator (P 47)
- (c) At any rate the great man's ancestors (P 48-49)
- (d) A French squadron the Neapolitan crown (P 49)
- (e) Lower down too . . . for it to discover. (P 53)
- (f) The truly great are apt . . . can compass (P 53)
- (g) Having a ringing . . . might have heeded (P 54)
- (h) In real life people do not spring to something (P 54)
- (i) It may be a question whether seen on the seas (P 55)

(j) And it must not . . . to an improvement (P. 56)

(i) And this piece of episcopal bad faith perpetrated (P 62)

(i) He was also confirmed the Florentine philosopher (P. 57-58)

### IX — Write short notes upon —

John of Anjou's expedition against Naples The University of Pavia. The Ultima Thule The discoveries by the Northmen in North America A way by the west to the Indies Cipango. The *Cosmographia* of Aliaco Sea-serpent The accounts given by Marco Polo and Sir John Maundeville. Salamanders. Pigmies. The well-known expedient for making an egg stand on end. Mammoth reeds corresponding with Ptolemy's account.

## CHAPTER III.

I — (a) What was the state of geographical (a) knowledge, (b) Science, and (c) Conjecture at the time of the first voyage across the Atlantic (*Calcutta University F A. Examination, 1878*)—*Read Text, Pp 56, 57, 58, (Ch II) and P 66, Ch III*

(b) Account for the discouragement with which his scheme met at first (*Cal F A 1878*)

*Ans*—(1) The ignorance of learned men (2) The jealousy of the nobles and prelates, especially of Fra Hernando de Talavera (3) Theological objections. i.e., seeming inconsistency of Columbus's theory with the texts of the Bible, and the writings of the Fathers of the Church (4) The Political situation of Spain was unfavourable, the sovereigns being engaged in the War against the Moors

II — By whom was Columbus introduced to Queen Isabella?

(a) Describe the progress and result of Columbus's application to the Spanish Court (*Summary, paras. 1—7*. There is a misprint in the number "Para 5" should be "paras 5—6")

(b) Who were Columbus's supporters and who his enemies, when he was leading the life of a suitor at the Spanish Court? (*See Summary*)

(c) State the terms of the agreement entered into by Columbus with the Spanish sovereigns [*Summary, para 7*]

III.—Sketch the character of King Ferdinand, and contrast it with those of Columbus, and Isabella

*Ans* [See *Summary, para 5, &c*, and *read Text, para. 6, p 77, and add the following, and read also the character of Isabella, Q. IV, Ch. IV.*]

**Character of Ferdinand**—Irving writes —“ His genius was clear and comprehensive, his judgment grave and certain. He was simple in dress, and diet, equable in his temper, devout in his religion, and so indefatigable in business, that it was said he seemed to repose himself by working. He was a great observer and judge of men, and unparalleled in the science of the Cabinet. Such is the picture given of him by the Spanish historians of his time. It has been added, however, that he had more of bigotry than religion, that his ambition was craving rather than magnanimous, that he made war less like a paladin than a prince, less for glory than for mere dominion, and that his policy was cold, selfish, and artful. He was called the wise and prudent in Spain, in Italy, the pious, in France and England, the ambitious and perfidious.”

#### IV—Explain —

- |     |                             |                         |        |
|-----|-----------------------------|-------------------------|--------|
| (a) | The campaign                | to the cross            | (P 64) |
| (b) | Here was a step             | consideration           | (P 65) |
| (c) | What it was to endure       | small authority         | (P 68) |
| (d) | Or perhaps that love        | . nobler sort           | (P 69) |
| (e) | He had exchanged            | cloister                | (P 69) |
| (f) | And one can fancy . .       | simple life             | (P 70) |
| (g) | Who was probably            | little understood       | (P 70) |
| (h) | For Columbus carried        | fifteenth               | (P 72) |
| (i) | It is not to be wondered    | men in power            | (P 76) |
| (j) | Here, however, the ultimate | in the new world        | (P 76) |
| (k) | The American yachts         | whose in the year 1867. | (P 81) |

#### V—Write short notes upon —

The war with the Moors Subjugation of the Crescent to the Cross The conquest of Granada The middle ages The Fathers of the Church A very up-hill task Superficial men in small authority The learned leisure of the cloister The monastery of La Rabida Golden weakness “Pauper pilot promising rich realms” Antipodes The cave of Adullam A proclamation of immunity from criminal and Civil process The project of a monomania Deeked throughout Deeked fore and aft, but not amidships The stem. The stern

### CHAPTER IV

I—Describe very briefly Columbus's first voyage across the Atlantic (*Summary, paras 1—20*)

II—State Columbus's own impressions of the general characteristics, habits, and condition of the people of the New World (*Summary, paras 20—27*)

III—Write a note on the discovery of the practice of smoking tobacco, and the benefit the world has derived from it (*Summary, paras 26—27, for “benefit, &c.” see Text, P 102, para 26, and Notes*)

IV —Sketch the character of Queen Isabella, and comment upon her motives of assenting to the most 'lamentably unjust things' which took place during her reign

*Ans* —Character of Isabella —“Contemporary writers have been enthusiastic in their descriptions of Isabella, but time has sanctioned their eulogies. She is one of the purest and most beautiful characters in the pages of history. There was a singular modesty in her countenance, gracing, as it did, a wonderful firmness of purpose, and earnestness of spirit. She exceeded Ferdinand in beauty, in personal dignity, in acuteness of genius and in grandeur of soul. Combining the active and resolute qualities of man with the softer charities of woman, she mingled in the war-like councils of her husband, engaged personally in his enterprises and in some instances surpassed him in the firmness and intrepidity of her measures; while, being inspired with a truer idea of glory, she infused a more lofty and generous temper into his subtle and calculating policy. Her fostering and maternal care was continually directed to reform the laws, and heal the ills engendered by a long course of internal war. She loved her people, and while diligently seeking their good, she mitigated, as much as possible, the harsh measures of her husband, directed to the same end, but inflamed by a mistaken zeal. Thus, though almost bigoted in her piety and perhaps too much under the influence of ghostly advisers, still she was hostile to every measure calculated to advance religion at the expense of humanity. She strenuously opposed the expulsion of the Jews, and the establishment of the Inquisition though, unfortunately for Spain, her repugnance was slowly vanquished by her confessors. She was always an advocate for clemency to the Moors, although she was the soul of the war against Granada. While all her public thoughts and acts were princely and august, her private habits were simple, frugal and unostentatious. In the intervals of state business, she assembled round her the ablest men in literature and science, and directed herself by their counsels, in promoting letters and arts. She promoted the distribution of honours and rewards for the promulgation of knowledge; she fostered the art of printing recently invented, and encouraged the establishment of presses in every part of the kingdom; books were admitted free of all duty, and more we are told, were printed in Spain, at that early period of the art, than in the present literary age.—*Irving*

V.—Explain :—

- (a) One can fancy how ..kinsmen .. ... (P. 81)  
 (b) Columbus was ..his Guide. .. fail him (Pp 81 82) .  
 (c) They are like men listening .. of beginning ... (P. 89)  
 (d) What a daring... Trickless, .. that neared not . (P. 89) .  
 (e) He saw light darkness .. people ... .. (P 92)  
 (f) Say the royal banners. . . the Alhambra .. (P 93)  
 (g) A countenance too . . next thing to it' . (P 95) .  
 (h) She obeyed the voice of heaven . Its interpreters (P. 95) .

- (1) Oh ! that she had . . . . . fortress .. . . . (Pp 95, 96)  
 (2) But at least the . . no other "protector" she lived (P 96)  
 (3) Tears of that deepest . . . . . the cause of .. (P 97)  
 (4) For thus it is . . .shuddering awe ..mankind (P. 97)  
 (m) The vast resolve leaving a strange - melancholy (Pp 97, 98)  
 (n) New difficulties, however.. .. renewed endeavours (P 98)  
 (o) One of those commodities many a revolution . (Pp 102--3)  
 (p) Indeed, it is almost . Marco Polo. .other travellers (P 105)  
 (q) The responsibility ..quite to sleep . . . . . (P. 107)  
 (r) The wrecker's trade might St Domingo ... (P 108)  
 (s) Providence dealt with her ugliness large dowry (P 109)  
 (t) As for Queen Isabella...compelling reason.. as she did (Pp 94, 95)

### VI.—Write short notes upon —

Friday, not inauspicious in this case. The Sacrament Dismal life of a sutor Columbus's diary Offing Logbook. *Mar de Sar-gasso* A point of the compass *Gloria in excelsis* The poop Overlooker The Alhambra "Sects of perdition" The sect of Mahomet The expulsion of the Jews The treatment of the Moorish converts The establishment of the Inquisition "Protector" Doctrines maintained by Christians in respect of giving Smoking as a vice "His Cipango" *Terra Firma*. The wreckers trade. *La Navidad*.

## CHAPTER V.

I.—Describe, as briefly as you can, Columbus's first homeward voyage (*Summary, paras 1—9*)

II—Give some account of Martin Alonzo Pinzon ; of his place in the discovery of America, his attitude towards Columbus, his desertion of the Admiral, the explanation he gave of it, and his end (*Summary, Ch III., paras. 4 and 7 under "Columbus at Palos again" Ch. V, paras 1, and 8—9, under "Pinzon's bad faith"*)

III.—Describe the capture of the pilgrims in the island of St Mary. (*Sum, para 7*)

IV—Give a description of the reception of Columbus accorded by the court at Barcelona, and compare Columbus's procession with a Roman Triumph. (*Summary, paras 10, 11 and 12.*)

V—What measures did the Spanish Government adopt for the management of colonial affairs and for sending out a second expedition under Columbus? What instructions did Columbus receive from the sovereigns about the treatment of the Indians. (*Summary, para. 17.*)

VI.—[1] Give a short account of Columbus's interview with the king of Portugal on his return from the New World. (*See Text, page 119, para 8.*)

[2] Describe briefly the storm encountered by Columbus during his first homeward voyage. (*Summary, paras. 4—6*)

VII.—Explain —

- (a) This must have been .. .. .for itself . . . . .(p 119)
- (b) Not an individual member an object of enthusiasm (p. 120)
- (c) If any man ever died... Martin Alonso Pinzon .. (p 121)
- (d) It (reputation) does not ..comprehend about it .. (p 121)
- (e) A triumphal procession like his not yet seen ... (p. 122)
- (f) Here was the conqueror .....fearful unknown .. „prejudices of centuries ..(p 122)
- (g) He recounted briefly Dido by Æneas close to home (p. 123)
- (h) It brings before us again the profound import . the Indians (p 124)
- (i) The scriptural land of Havilah was not far off (p 127)
- (j) Twelve missionaries ..spiritual darkness .....Benedictine monk .. (p 127)
- (k) The instructions to Columbus .. first strokes... .. wisdom and of mercy .. .. (Pp 127—28)

VIII — Write short notes upon —

The lookout at the mast-head The Pinta hove in sight. *El Dorado*. Amazons Close-reefed foresail Scudding under bare poles Blinding spray The E. N. E. Satellites Lee-shore Papal bull The bar of Saltes Triumphal procession. *Te Deum* Coat of arms An imaginary line drawn from pole to pole The apostolic bulls. Department for the control of colonial affairs Juan de Fonseca Patriarch of the Indies. Fever for discovery. Scriptural land of Havilah.

## CHAPTER VI.

I.—State the causes that led to the destruction of the colony at La Navidad (*Sum., para 3 and Notes*)

II.—Give a summary of Columbus's despatch from the colony at Isabella to the Spanish sovereigns, together with the orders passed by them on the proposals made therein. (*Sum., paras 5—15*)

III.—State the arguments that Columbus adduced in favour of his proposal regarding the adoption of slave-trade What was the attitude of the sovereigns towards such a proposal? Comment upon their motives. (*Summary, para. 5—15, the second half of the summary of the*

"Despatch," commencing from the *Italicised line*,—"A proposal concerning slavery, &c.")

IV—Describe the condition of the Spanish colonies during Columbus's second visit to the New World (*Summary, para. 16.*)

V.—"There was also another evil, besides that of inconsiderate mining, and, perhaps, quite as mischievous as one which stood in the way of the steady improvement of these early Spanish colonies" Enlarge upon the statement. (*Text p 140, para 17*)

VI—Explain —

(a) It was Sunday, and to which the admiral came (P 130)

(b) The more rapidly of much-coveted India able to elum . . . (P. 140)

VII—Write short notes upon —

Golden dreams Complimentary address Put to Sea The customs duties Cannibals Flag-ship. Los Reyes

## CHAPTER VII.

I—"The admiral, before his departure, had given a most injudicious command to Margarite." What was the nature of this "most injudicious command"? With what object was it given? What did it result in? (*Summary, paras 4—5*)

II.—(1) Narrate the struggle between the Spanish settlers and the Indians under Guatignana and Caonabo (*Summary, paras 6—7*)

(2) Describe the manner in which Caonabo was captured. (*Summary, para 8*)

III—What measures of settlement did Columbus adopt for an orderly government of the Indians after he had suppressed their risings? (*Summary, paras 9—10*)

IV—Summarise and comment upon, Columbus's views on the question of slave-trade. (*Summary, paras 11—12*)

V—Characterise the scruples of the monarchs regarding slave-trade What did they do with the slaves sent to Spain by Columbus with Antonio de Torres? (*Summary, para 13*)

VL—(1) Enumerate the charges that were laid at the door of Columbus by Margarite and Buil (*Summary, paras. 15—16 Commencing from the Italicised line,—“Plots to ruin Columbus”*)

(2) Name the “Commissioner of Inquiry” sent from Spain, and describe his proceedings (*Summary, paras 15—16*)

VII. Describe Columbus’s second homeward voyage, and contrast his second reception in Spain with the first (*Summary, para 17*)

VIII—Explain—

An unsuccessful is generally... false pretences. (P. 156)

IX—Write short notes upon:—

“The Garden of the Queen” Judgment *Esposas* Talking brass *Turey* Ablutions *Arroba* *Repartimientos* Gold in bars.

## CHAPTER VIII.

I—What were the two “injudicious edicts” that were published by the Spanish sovereigns in 1497? (*Summary, para. 2*)

II—(a) Give an account of Don Bartholomew Columbus’s government of Hispaniola during the Admiral’s absence (*Summary, paras 4—10.*)

(b) What do you know of the Revolt of Roldan? When, how, and by whom was it brought to a close? (*Summary, paras 9—10, and Ch. X., para. 2*)

(c) What led to the insurrection headed by Guarionex? Describe his flight and subsequent capture. (*Summary, end of paras 6—8, commencing from “Tribute imposed” and paras 11—13*)

III—Account for the constant disputes between Columbus and his brothers, and the Spanish colonists. (*Text, Pp. 166—67.*)

IV—Explain—

(a) It may be imagined. .. almost always in the right  
to make them so (P. 166)

(b) Who imagined that they. . . Alsatian immunity (P. 167)

(c) It is very difficult when .. stream of ill-will...  
long time (P. 168)

(d) Thus concludes a story. ... Indian Plutarch . beauty  
of great actions .. (P. 171)



V—Write short notes upon :—

*Letters patent.* *Adelantado.* *To Saddle upon.*  
An Alsatian immunity. Some Indian Pintarch.

### CHAPTER IX.

I—(1) Give, as briefly as you can, an account of Columbus's third voyage. (*Summary, paras. 1—14.*)

(2) What memorable events are specially associated with this voyage?

*Ans.* (a) The discovery of the continent of America. (b) Columbus's serious illness and sufferings. (c) Special instructions given by the sovereign to Columbus on the eve of his departure for 'benignantly' treating the Indians and converting them to Christianity. (*Summary Paras 1—3.*)

II—(1) Where, and under what circumstances, did Columbus view the continent of America for the first time? (*Sum., paras. 8—12*)

(2) What were his first notions regarding the land thus seen? (*Sum., paras. 13—14*)

(3) How did the idea strike him that the land in question was not an island, but a continent?

*Ans.* "From the large volumes of fresh water falling into the gulf of Paria, he began to guess that the so-called Island of Gracia was not an island, but a continent." (*Sum., paras. 13—14*)

(4) State the circumstances that must have influenced Columbus's mind in forming the conclusion that the so-called island was really a continent. (*Sum., paras. 15—16.*)

III—Give short accounts of :—

(1) Columbus's theory of the shape of the earth. (*Sum., paras 17—18.*)

(2) His idea of the Earthly Paradise. (*Sum., paras. 19—20.*)

(3) His first impressions of the men and the scenery of the continent. (*Sum., paras. 21—23.*)

(4) His illness during the third voyage. (*Sum., paras. 24—25.*)

(5) His discovery of pearls, and the motive of his not mentioning it to the sovereigns. (*Text, paras. 14 and 24.*)

IV.—“The description given by Columbus of the natives whom he encounters in his voyages is almost always favourable” Account for this, and also for the difference of opinion on the same subject held by his companions —(*Text, page 187—88, para. 23.*)

V.—Explain —

- (a) The great admiral ..Cape Verde islands...  
as he observes ... .. (P 174)
- (b) Now Columbus was ...thread their obser-  
vations ... .. (Pp. 184—85)
- (c) And, as few persons have.....his explana-  
tion ... .. (P. 185)
- (d) Those little differences. .... Columbus or  
Las Casas ... minds ... .. (P. 187)
- (e) The rude Spanish common soldier ... ..  
similar comparison .. ... (P. 188)
- (f) Occasionally, in a narrow nature...suffices  
to conquer it .. .. (P. 188)

VI.—Write short notes upon —

“*Salve Regina*” “Our Lady.” “*La Galea*” “At the hour of complines” Caulking. “Bows” *Punto de Aguja* The *Boca del Drago* The *Boca de la Sierpe* Magnetic current. Passage of the line. The earthly Paradise. *Keffeh*. A mocking foretaste.

## CHAPTER X.

I.—“Columbus, in his letters to the sovereigns, enters into an account of the pecuniary advantages that will arise from these slave-dealing transactions, and from the sale of log-wood.” Give an account of the detailed scheme he submitted as to the proposed slave-barter. (*Summary, para 1, commencing from “Trade in logwood and slaves proposed”*)

II—Describe the way in which Columbus brought Roldan revolt to a close. (*Sum, para. 2. See Question II. (2), Ch. VIII*)

III.—(1) What were the grounds of Queen Isabella’s extreme indignation at the proceedings of the admiral. (*Sum, paras. 3—4.*)

(2) What proclamation was made by the Queen with regard to the slaves brought from the New World at this time? Reproduce Help’s remarks upon this proclamation. (*Sum., paras. 3—4.*)

IV.—Trace the gradual development of the system of settlement called *Repartimiento* (*Summary, Ch VII, para 10, Ch VIII, para 3, Ch X, para 3*)

V.—(1) How far were Columbus's enemies at court successful in prejudicing the people and the sovereigns against him? (*Sum, para 6*)

(2) Give an account of Ferdinand Columbus's picture of some of the complaints preferred against his father.—(*Text, p 197, para 6*)

(3) What led to the suspension of Columbus from his governorship? (*Sum, para. 7*)

VI.—When and with what ostensible object, was Francis de Bobadilla appointed Governor of the Indies? (*Sum., para. 7 From "Bobadilla appointed Governor."*)

VII.—Sketch the character of Francis de Bobadilla. (*Sum., paras 8—9, only the lines under "His character" or Text, page 200, para 8. From "I imagine him, &c."*)

VIII.—Summarise the proceedings of Bobadilla on his arrival at St. Domingo (*Summary paras 8—9, only the lines under "His high-handedness"*)

IX.—Enumerate the charges brought against Columbus and his brothers. Give the substance of Helps's justification of Columbus (*Summary, paras 8—9, under "Accusations against Columbus," and "Remarks on the complaints"*)

X.—Explain.—

(a) And now there was time . . . Jerusalem. conversion of Cathay . . . . . (P 196)

(b) Which poured the juice of aloes . . . portion of his life . . . . . (P 196)

(c) And is fortunate if he does not . . colossal largeness . . . . . (P. 200)

(d) In these chains Columbus is of more interest . . . posterity . . . him . . . . . (P 203)

(e) Poor Columbus . . . heavily upon him . . (P. 202)

XI.—Write short notes upon.—

Defection of Roldan The sacred Trinity *Cuentos Matas Montones* The juice of aloes The admiral of Mosquitoland. Colonial blunder.

## CHAPTER XI.

I — Draw a contrast between Columbus's first return to Spain with the third (*Sum.*, para 1, only the first four lines *N B* Correct a misprint here in the heading in bold type "*Second*" should be "*Third*."

II — (1) Give an account of Columbus's private interview with Queen Isabella (*Summary*, paras 3, 4)

(2) What was king Ferdinand's attitude towards him now? (*Summary*, para -2)

III — (1) What led to the removal of Bobadilla from the government of the Indies? (*Sum.*, para 5)

(2) By whom was Bobadilla superseded? Sketch the character of the new Governor (*Summary*, para 6.)

IV — (1) Give a summary of the instructions, both written and verbal, which Ovando received from the Spanish sovereigns, on the eve of his departure (*Summary*, paras 7—8 and 10—20)

(2) Reproduce Helps's observations on these instructions (*Summary*, para 21)

(3) Quote some of the pithy moral sayings from these instructions (*Select from the passages extracted under Q XI*)

V.—Give a rapid sketch of Ovando's government (*Summary*, paras 22, 23, 26—29, Chapter XII paras 3—4, under "*A messenger sent to Ovando*," Chapter XII, para 13, Chapter XIII, paras 1—2, under "*Differences with Ovando*" )

VI — (1) Who was Anacaona?

(2) Summarise Peter Martyr's account of Anacaona's reception of Don Bartholomew Columbus, the Adelantado (*Summary*, paras 24—26)

(3) What made Ovando pay a visit to Xaragua? (*Summary*, paras 26—29 Only the lines under "*Ovando's visit to Xaragua*" )

(4) Briefly describe Anacaona's reception of Ovando, and the massacre of the Indians (*Summary*, paras 26—29, commencing from "*Anacaona's Reception of Ovando*" )

VII—Describe the disaster that resulted from Ovando's disregard of Columbus's prediction, about 'a terrible hurricane' (*Summary, paras 31—32*)

VIII—(1) Give a *very short* account of Columbus's fourth voyage across the Atlantic. With what object was it undertaken? (*Summary, from para. 30 to the end of the Chapter*)

(2) What circumstance deprived Columbus of being the discoverer of Mexico? (*Summary, paras. 36—37*)

IX—(1) How did Ovando treat Bobadilla and Roldan? (*Summary, para 23*)

(2) Draw a contrast between Ovando and Columbus, stating their policies of dealing with the Indians (*Summary, para 23, under "Ovando and Columbus contrasted"*)

X—(1) Describe the characteristics and attitude of the natives of the coast of Honduras.

(2) Describe the commencement, progress, and termination of the struggle between Quibia the native Cacique and the Adelantado (*Summary, paras 40, 41, 42, 43*)

# XI—Explain —

- (a) He was then a conqueror...insidious maligners . (P 204)
- (b) Rather let injurious sayings . magnanimity . (P 214)
- (c) That he (Ovando) should . theatre . the world . (P 215)
- (d) There are many persons who . than to gain it . (P 215)
- (e) Since if all offences were looked . without punishment . (P. 215)
- (f) If they are punished in excess. . bad impulses . (P 215)
- (g) Indeed that sagacity .. Machiavelli's "Prince" . statesman . . (P 217)
- (h) It was, however, about twelve years unpublished work.. . . . (P 217)
- (i) I will take care to make an example of . their powers . (P. 208)
- (j) For, if Columbus had chastised . whips . . . . . (P. 209)
- (k) But, like Bobadilla, he was a knight of a religious order . character . . . . . (P 218)
- (l) And so, whereas Columbus had always . rod of iron . . . . . (P 218)
- (m) They lived in the discipline ..from Roldan . (P. 220)

- (n) Thus they argued, using all those . . .perpetuated treachery . . . (P. 221)  
 (o) He himself, a Tiberius in dissembling quoits . . . (p 222)  
 (p) Humanity does not gain much . . ." Lordship" . . . right to . . . (p 223)  
 (q) Finally, the governor. . "the city of true peace" . . . field of blood . . . (p 223)  
 (r) I observe that the arms assigned rainbow, a cross . (p 223)  
 (s) Like Cassandra, Columbus which he had foretold (p 228)  
 (t) But this savage like his evil destiny road to fortune (p 231)  
 (u) At last, after eight Bethlehem Epiphany . (p 233)  
 (v) The admiral made sure Aurea Chersonesus Jerusa-lem . . . . . (p 233)

## XII.—Write short notes upon.—

To make an example of Scourings of Spanish prisons Com. mendador Mayor of the Order of Alcántara Permits *Residencia*  
 A great master of that art Tale-bearers Machiavelli's "Prince"  
 To rule with a rod of iron To chastise with whip and scorpions.  
*Juga de Canas* A Tiberius in 'dissembling To play at quoits.  
*The badge of (his) knighthood, "La villa de la vera Paz"* *Acclama-*  
*dama* "The city of the true peace" "The field of blood" A  
 dove with the olive-branch, a rainbow, and a cross *Cassandra* The  
 lee of the land His evil destiny Moor his vessels Water-spouts.  
 Phosphorescent floods Bethlehem The day of Epiphany *Aurea*.  
*Chersonesus* Solomon War to the knife Offing. Weather-tight.  
 To cope with the squalls and breakers of the Archipelago.

## CHAPTER XII.

I —Give a very brief account of the critical situation of Columbus and his party at Santa Gloria in Jamaica How were they rescued from this position? (*Summary of the whole chapter*)

II —(1) Summarise Columbus's despatch to the Spanish monarchs from Santa Gloria (*Text, Pp 240—41*)

(2) Show "how this despatch is very characteristic of the writer." *Text, P. 239* from "*This despatch* (down to) *in the face of ruin*"

III —"Though this (despatch) be madness, there is method in it," but still the whole character of Columbus forbids us to assume that this alleged vision was merely an ingenious device for remonstrating with the sovereigns"

(a) What is the full import of this statement? (see *Notes on the passage*).

- (b) Reproduce what Helps says in justification of Columbus's character. (*Text para 5, pages 242—3 or Summary para 5*)
- (c) Characterise the religious side of Columbus's mental constitution (*Sum., para 5 Text, p 53, para 7, from "while, for what is beyond here imagination can compass" Preface, paras 5, 6, 9, 10*)

IV —(1) Give a short account of the mutiny of Porras What gave rise to it? What bad effects did it produce? How did it terminate? (*Summary, paras 8, 9-10, 14, 15—17*)

- (2) Describe the expedient with which Columbus succeeded in re-establishing his influence over the Indians, and getting supplies from them (*Summary, paras 11—12*)
- (3) Relate the curious despatch of Ovando to Columbus (*Sum, para 13*)

V.—Explain —

- (a) This despatch is very characteristic . . . in the face of rain (p 239)
- (b) What did he more people of Israel. from Egypt (p 240)
- (c) Abraham was above a hundred years Sarah youthful? (p 240)
- (d) All these are written in the marble . without cause (p 241)
- (e) Though this be madness . . . method in it (p 241)
- (f) It was easy for an imagination. 'airy nothings'. . . heaven (p 242)
- (g) Severed from the holy sacraments . . . for ever forgotten (p 242)
- (h) He staked both body and soul on his success (p 243)
- (i) The circulating medium . scarcely procurable (p 247)
- (j) As for the caravel an apparition . . . by magic arts (Pp 251—52)
- (k) And such was the reputation . peace-offering phantom ship (p 252)

VI —Write short notes upon —

The Swiss lake dwellings Moses David Abraham, Isaac, Sarah A sarcasm "to catch the conscience of the King" - "Airy nothings" Revelations from heaven Temporized. 'To Castile' We follow" Swamped Quartering themselves on The circulating medium Fertile in devices Gratuitous assumption Judgment Diplomatically hesitating Have in sight Quarantine Tantalizing Missive At the expense of strict truth Peace-offering Phantom ship Stentorian yell Were at their heels Miraculous vitality. Weariness of hope deferred.

## CHAPTER XIII.

I—How was Columbus received by Ovando when he had arrived at St Domingo? What were the nature and the immediate cause of the differences that soon arose between Columbus and Ovando? (*Sum*, *paras* 1—2, under *Differences with Ovando*)

II—[1] Describe the decline of Columbus's fortune since his arrival in Spain from the fourth voyage (*Sum*, *paras* 3—4, 5—6, and 7, 8—9 Omitting "*Oppression of the Indians*, &c)

[2] Show how the proverb "Fear old age, for it does not come alone" was specially applicable to Columbus [*Text*, *p.* 261, *para* 8]

III—[1] When did Queen Isabella die? How was she disposed towards the Indians? [*Text*, *Pp* 258—59. *End of para* 5.]

[2] Describe the condition of the Indians at the time of Isabella's death (*Text*, *Pp* 259—60, *para* 6 Or *Summary*, *paras.* 5—6, under "*Oppression of the Indians*"

[3] "Ever since his return from his fourth voyage to the Indies, Columbus had done little else than memorialize and petition, and negotiate about his rights" What was the result of these proceedings? How did king Ferdinand dispose of his petitions? (*Sum*, *para* 7)

## IV—Explain—

(a) But even in this last voyage sea of troubles . . . . . (P 257)

(b) His evil star was in the ascendant . . . . . (P. 257)

(c) The dread decree, however, had gone forth . no more (P. 258)

(d) If it be permitted . 'one longing lingering look to the far West . . . . . (Pp 258—59)

(e) The proverb "Fear old age applicable to Columbus (P 261)

(f) A similar decline of fortune . successful in their prime . . . . . (P. 261.)

(g) Their fortunes grow old . vigour of the day . . . . . setting sun . . . . . (P 261)

(h) But there was then only left . waters of further life (P. 261)

(i) Looked at in this way, what a great is to be (P. 262)

(j) "*In manus tuas, Domine, commendo spiritum meum*" (P 262)



## V — Write short notes upon —

Punctilious Courtesy Conflicting jurisdictions of the viceroy and the governor "Make head against a sea of troubles" Ascendant. Sprung Hair stands on end "One longing, lingering look" to the far West Mockery of wages Buffetings Board of Discharges of the Royal conscience Arrival of Philip and his queen Great travellers in thought and deed Unknown waters of further life, Ascension day

## GENERAL QUESTIONS

I.—Helps says—"My History of the Spanish conquest in America was written chiefly with a view to illustrate the history of slavery" Trace the history of slavery from the *Life of Columbus*, [which is a portion of the main work] noting the position of the slave during the 15th century and before it, and the treatment he had received at the hands of Ferdinand and Isabella

(Summary, Chapter I, para 20, first four lines Text, Page 22, para 21 "For slavery was now assuming &c, to the end of the para Parias 21-25, Summary, Chapter I, paras 26-33, under Management of slavery" Chapter VI Summary, paras 5-15, from "A proposal concerning slavery"—to the end of the paragraph Chapter VII Summary, paras 11-12, para 13 Chapter VIII, para 1, Chapter X Summary, para 1, from "Trade in logwood and slave proposed" paras 3-4, Chapter XI, Summary, paras 7-8, Chapter XIII, Text, p 259-60, para 6, from "She had insisted that the Indians were to be free &c" to the end of the para, p 260)

II—Trace the attitude of Ferdinand and Isabella towards Columbus from the beginning to the end (Sum, Ch III, para 5, Ch V, paras 11-12 Ch X, paras 3-4, 7. Ch XI, para 2, 4, 30, Ch XIII, para 7)

III—(1) Give a short outline of the administration of Columbus as governor of the Indies (Calcutta, F. A. Examn, 1879) See Summary, Chs VI-X

(2) Give a very short account of the life of Columbus

## Ans Life of Columbus

Christopher Columbus, the most celebrated navigator, and one of the greatest men recorded in history, was born at Genoa about 1447, and is supposed to have been of humble descent. He was educated at the University of Pavia, but soon evinced a strong passion for geographical knowledge, together with an irresistible inclination for the sea. After many years spent in the active duties of a maritime life, with his mind bent on the acquisition of geogra-

phical and nautical science, he went to Lisbon, where he married the orphan daughter of Perestrello, an Italian navigator, and studied all the maps and charts he could procure, making occasional voyages, in which alternation of theoretical and practical improvement he spent several years. His own reflections, corroborated by facts of which he was informed by various seamen, led him at length to feel convinced that there were lands separated from Europe by the Atlantic. After vainly seeking aid from Genoa, Portugal and England he at length succeeded in inducing Ferdinand the Catholic and Isabella of Spain to equip and man three vessels for a voyage of discovery, it being stipulated that Columbus should have an eighth of all profits and be viceroy of the land he expected to discover. He set sail from Palos, on his daring adventure on the 3rd of August, 1492, and after sailing for two months, was in imminent danger of losing the reward of all his study and toil, the variation of the needle having so much alarmed the crews that they were on the point of breaking into open mutiny and he was obliged to promise that if three days more produced no discovery he would commence his homeward voyage. On the third day they happily bore in sight of one of the Bahamas, and subsequently explored some other of the West India Islands. Having thus far succeeded, he built a fort at Hispaniola, left some of his men there, and then set out on his return to Europe, where he was received with every mark of admiration and regard. The gold and other valuables which he presented to the king and queen in token of his success, excited the spirit of adventure in both the sovereigns and their subjects, and in his 2nd voyage he had no difficulty in obtaining followers. It was not until his third voyage, made in 1498, that he saw the mainland of America. Having assumed the command of the settlement at Hispaniola, various complaints were made against him by his bitterest enemies, and Columbus was not merely displaced, but Bobadilla the new governor, who had been deputed thither by the court of Spain, even sent him to that country manacled as a prisoner. Columbus endured this outrage with noble equanimity, and on his return, having obtained an audience of his sovereigns, was partially restored to his dignities, but he found that full justice was never intended to be awarded him. Yet, notwithstanding this unworthy treatment, he made another voyage, in which he encountered every imaginable disaster, from storms and shipwreck, and two years after his return, his noble mind sank under the load of injustice and oppression. He died at Valladolid, on the 20th of May, 1506.